

[Content](#)

[A-Z](#)



# OWNER'S MANUAL.

## BMW M2.







# WELCOME TO BMW.

## Owner's Manual.

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with the vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest the following:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle. It contains important notes on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and traffic safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. After a vehicle software update – such as a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

You can find supplementary information in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable ride.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update – such as a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

## ! NOTES

Information ..... 6

## 🔑 QUICK REFERENCE

Getting in ..... 16

Set-up and use ..... 19

On the road ..... 23

## 👉 CONTROLS

Dashboard ..... 30

Sensors of the vehicle ..... 35

Operating condition of the vehicle ..... 39

BMW iDrive ..... 43

BMW Remote Software Upgrade ..... 58

Personal settings ..... 62

Opening and closing ..... 69

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel ..... 93

Transporting children safely ..... 107

Driving ..... 113

Displays ..... 133

Lights ..... 152

Safety ..... 159

Driving stability control systems ..... 180

Driver assistance systems ..... 192

Parking ..... 208

Driving comfort ..... 222

Climate control ..... 223

Interior equipment ..... 234

Storage compartments ..... 240

Cargo area ..... 243

## DRIVING TIPS

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| BMW M2 Technology .....               | 248 |
| Things to remember when driving ..... | 249 |
| Saving fuel .....                     | 255 |

## MOBILITY

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| Refueling .....            | 256 |
| Wheels and tires .....     | 258 |
| Engine compartment .....   | 284 |
| Operating materials .....  | 287 |
| Maintenance .....          | 294 |
| Replacing components ..... | 296 |
| Breakdown Assistance ..... | 300 |
| Vehicle Care .....         | 308 |

## REFERENCE

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| Technical data .....         | 314 |
| Appendix .....               | 316 |
| Everything from A to Z ..... | 318 |

---

© 2023 Bayerische Motoren Werke

Aktiengesellschaft

Munich, Germany

Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written consent of BMW AG, Munich.

US English ID8 II/23, -

Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

# Information

## Using this Owner's Manual

### Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

For an overview of the vehicle, we recommend reading the quick reference guide in the owner's manual.

### Validity of the Owner's Manual

#### Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

#### After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update, such as via Remote Software Upgrade, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

### Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication is available as a printed book from an authorized service center.

The topics are also discussed in the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

## Media at a glance

### General information

The contents of the Owner's Manual are available in various media formats. The following Owner's Manual media formats are available:

- ▶ Printed Owner's Manual.
- ▶ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

### Printed Owner's Manual

The printed Owner's Manual shows all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models.

### Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

#### Principle

The Integrated Owner's Manual shows all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the control display.

### Selecting the Owner's Manual

1. ■■ Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Owner's Manual"
4. Select the desired method of accessing the contents.

### Scrolling through the Owner's Manual

Swipe up or down until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context help

General information

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be accessed from any menu. Depending on the selected function, either the associated description or the main menu of the Integrated Owner's Manual will be displayed.

Selecting context help from a menu

- 1. Press and hold the desired menu item.
- 2. "General help"

Selecting context help from a Check Control message

Directly from the Check Control message on the control display:  
"Owner's Manual"

Supplementary Owner's Manuals

Also follow the Supplementary Owner's Manuals, which are included in addition to the on-board literature.

Additional sources of information

Service center

An authorized service center, e.g., a BMW dealer or BMW service center, will be happy to answer your questions at any time.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW, such as on technology, are available on the Internet: [www.bmwusa.com](http://www.bmwusa.com).

BMW Driver's Guide app

The BMW Driver's Guide app shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become

available in the future, for specific models. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver's Guide Web

The BMW Driver's Guide website shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models. The BMW Driver's Guide Web can be displayed in any current browser.

Icons and displays

Icons in the Owner's Manual

| Icon Meaning                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle. |
|  | Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.                                                                                       |
| "..."                                                                             | Texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.                                                                                             |
| >...<                                                                             | Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.                                                                                      |
| >>...<<                                                                           | Responses generated by the voice activation system.                                                                                               |

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as a numbered list. These steps must be carried out in the order shown.

- 1. First action step.
- 2. Second action step.

Bulletpoint lists

Items or actions without strict order or alternative options are shown as a bulletpoint list.

- ▷ First possibility.
- ▷ Second possibility.

## Icons on vehicle parts

 This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Manual.

## Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models, i.e., model series. Therefore, this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates equipment, systems and functions that are not available in a vehicle, for example due to the following situations:

- ▷ Selected optional equipment
- ▷ National-market version or national-market equipment
- ▷ Options for later release and software update

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Before starting a journey, verify whether the described equipment or function is available in the vehicle. For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or other qualified service center.

A claim for the availability of equipment, a system or a function in the vehicle cannot be derived based on the description in the Owner's Manual.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any equipment and models not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

An authorized service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to the vehicle.

## Status of the Owner's Manual

### Basic information

The manufacturer of the vehicle pursues a policy of constant development to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may deviate from those in the vehicle.

### Validity of the Owner's Manual

#### Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

#### After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update, such as via Remote Software Upgrade, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

## For Your Own Safety

### Intended use

Heed the following when using the vehicle:



- Owner's Manual.
- Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- Technical vehicle data.
- The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

## Warranty

The vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applicable in the country of first delivery, also known as homologation. If the vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt the vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and registration requirements. Noncompliance with homologation requirements in a certain country may affect warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

## Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, for instance the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The vehicle manufacturer therefore recommends having necessary work performed by an authorized service center, e.g., a BMW dealer or service center. If a different repair shop is selected, BMW recommends selecting a workshop that performs the appropriate work such as maintenance and repair according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel. In the Owner's Manual, such works are referred to as "another qualified authorized service center or repair shop".

If work is not carried out properly, for instance maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damages and related safety risks.

Improperly performed work on the vehicle paintwork can lead to a failure or fault of com-

ponents, e.g., the radar sensors, and thereby result in a safety hazard.

## Parts and accessories

BMW recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by BMW.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from an authorized service center.

BMW parts and accessories have been tested by BMW for their safety and suitability in BMW vehicles.

BMW warrants genuine BMW parts and accessories.

BMW does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. BMW does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for BMW vehicles under all usage conditions.

## California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California, the law requires vehicle manufacturers to provide the following warning:

### **Warning**

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of Automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil con-

tains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water. For more information go to [www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle](http://www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle).

### **Warning**

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service the vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing the vehicle. For more information go to [www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle](http://www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle).

## Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. The vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- ▷ New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet.

The vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish

to operate the vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt the vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

## Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for maintenance measures:

- ▷ BMW maintenance system.  
Maintenance, refer to page 294.
- ▷ Maintenance Booklet, available online and accessible via a QR code in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet.
- ▷ Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

If the vehicle is not maintained or is improperly maintained, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle.

A failure to maintain the vehicle or improper maintenance may affect your warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Refer to section on engine oil change regarding recommended service intervals for oil changes.

## Data memory

### General information

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Electronic control units process data they receive from vehicle sensors, self-generate or exchange with each other. Some control units are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance during driving,

for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control units facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

Information about stored or exchanged data can be requested from the manufacturer of the vehicle, in a separate booklet, for example.

## Personal reference

Each vehicle is marked with a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, the vehicle owner can be identified with the vehicle identification number, license plate and corresponding authorities. In addition, there are other options to track data collected in the vehicle to the driver or vehicle owner, such as via the ConnectedDrive account that is used.

## Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data to operate the vehicle.

For example, this includes:

- ▶ Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel RPM, wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration, engaged seat belt indicator.
- ▶ Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The processed data is only processed in the vehicle itself while the vehicle is being operated. Data is not stored beyond the operating time.

Electronic components, e.g. control units and vehicle keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle condition, component usage, maintenance recommendations, events or faults can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally documents the state of a component, a module, a system, or the surrounding area, for instance:

- ▶ Operating states of system components, such as fill levels, tire pressure, battery status.
- ▶ Malfunctions and faults in important system components, for instance lights and brakes.
- ▶ Responses by the vehicle to special driving situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the driving stability control systems.
- ▶ Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required to perform the control unit functions. Furthermore, it also serves to detect and correct malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions.

The majority of this data is stored temporarily and is only processed within the vehicle itself. In some circumstances the vehicle may store some data for an additional but limited period of time.

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

An authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The diagnostic socket required by law in the vehicle is used to read out data.

The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the service network. The data documents technical conditions of the vehicle, which can be used to determine vehicle maintenance status, and facilitate quality improvement.

Vehicle fault and event memories can be reset by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop when performing repair or servicing work.

## Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

### General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified or reset at any time.

For example, this includes:

- ▶ Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- ▶ Chassis and climate control settings.

If necessary, data can be transferred to the entertainment and communication system of the vehicle, for instance via smartphone.

This includes the following depending on the respective equipment:

- ▶ Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- ▶ Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- ▶ Entered navigation destinations.
- ▶ Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time.

This data is only transmitted to third parties upon personal request as part of the use of online services. The transmission depends on the selected settings for the use of the services.

### Incorporation of mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle control elements.

The sound and picture from the mobile devices can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is

transferred to the mobile devices at the same time. Depending on the type of incorporation, this includes, for instance, position data and other general vehicle information. This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle, such as active access to vehicle data.

How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

## Services

### General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, it will enable data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for instance smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

### Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's web page. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection may also be found on the manufacturer's website. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for instance with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose.

Any collection, processing, and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on a

legal permission, contractual arrangement or consent. It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. This excludes functions and services required by law such as Assist systems.

### Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

## Event Data Recorder (EDR)

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- ▶ How various systems in the vehicle were operating.
- ▶ Whether or not the driver and passenger seat belts were fastened.
- ▶ How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- ▶ How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data is recorded by the vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, for instance name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

## Vehicle identification number

### General information

Depending on the national-market equipment, the vehicle identification number is located in different positions in the vehicle. This chapter describes all possible positions for the series.

### Engine compartment



The engraved vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

## Right nameplate



The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

## Left nameplate



The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the left-hand side of the vehicle.

## Windshield



The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

## iDrive

It is also possible to display the vehicle identification number via iDrive.

1. ■■ Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Vehicle ID (VIN):"

## Reporting safety defects

### For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that the vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

### For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, De-

fect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety>.

# Getting in

## Opening and closing

### Vehicle key



Buttons on the vehicle key.

| Icon | Meaning                              |
|------|--------------------------------------|
|      | Unlock.                              |
|      | Lock.<br>Stationary climate control. |
|      | Unlock the trunk.                    |
|      | Panic mode.<br>Pathway lighting.     |

### Access to vehicle interior

#### Unlocking with the vehicle key

Press the button on the vehicle key.

If only the driver's door and fuel filler flap have been unlocked due to the settings in place, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

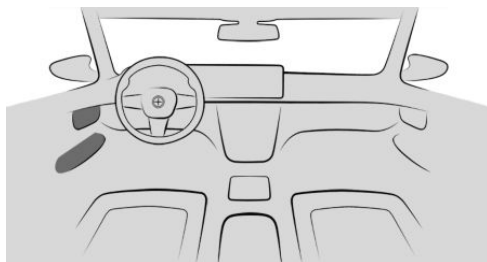
After opening one of the front doors, the vehicle is ready for operation.

#### Locking with the vehicle key

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.  
All vehicle access points are locked.

#### Buttons for the central locking system

##### Overview



The central locking buttons are located on the front door.

Lock.

Unlock.

#### Locking the vehicle

Press the button with the front doors closed.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

#### Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button.



## Panic mode

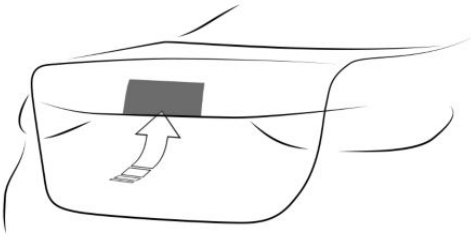
You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- ▶  Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- ▶  Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

## Access to the cargo area

### Opening the cargo area



- ▶ Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the trunk.
- ▶  Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.  
Depending on the setting, the doors may be unlocked.

### Closing the cargo area

Close the trunk manually.

## Displays, control elements

### In the vicinity of the steering wheel



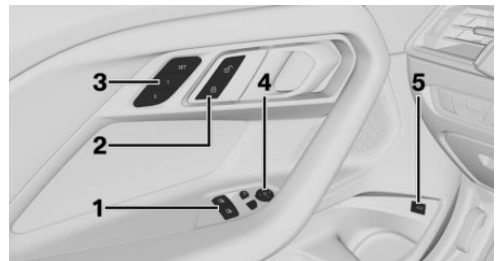
- 1 Light switch
- 2 Turn signal indicator, high beams
- 3 Instrument cluster
- 4 Wipers

### Indicator/warning lights

The indicator/warning lights can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colors.

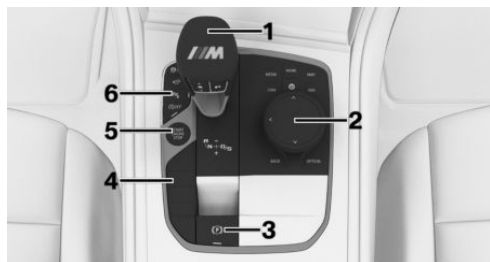
Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and illuminate temporarily when drive-ready state is turned on.

### Driver's door



- 1 Power windows
- 2 Central locking system
- 3 Seats, comfort features
- 4 Exterior mirrors
- 5 Cargo area

## Switch console



- 1 Selector lever
- 2 Controller
- 3 Parking brake, Automatic Hold
- 4 M MODE, M Setup, Sound Control
- 5 Start/Stop button
- 6 Assistance systems

## BMW iDrive

### Principle

BMW iDrive is the vehicle's display and operating concept and includes a wide range of functions.

### Buttons on the Controller

| Button | Function                                           |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------|
| HOME   | Call up the main menu.                             |
| MEDIA  | Call up the Media/Radio menu.                      |
| TEL    | Go to Phone menu.                                  |
| MAP    | Call up the navigation map.                        |
| NAV    | Call up the destination input menu for navigation. |

### Button Function

|        |                           |
|--------|---------------------------|
| BACK   | Go to previous menu.      |
| OPTION | Call up the Options menu. |

## BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

### Principle

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is a personal assistant that enables natural voice operation of various vehicle functions.

### Activating the voice control system

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel briefly.
2. Say the command.

### Canceling voice control

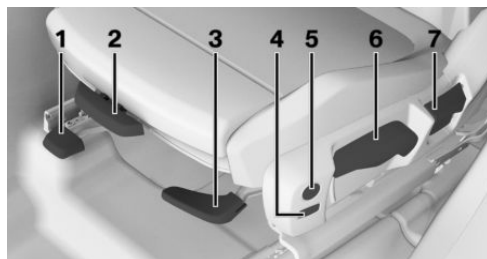
- ▶  Press the button on the steering wheel again.
- ▶ >Cancel<
- ▶ Slide the Controller to the right or left.
- ▶ Press the Controller.



# Set-up and use

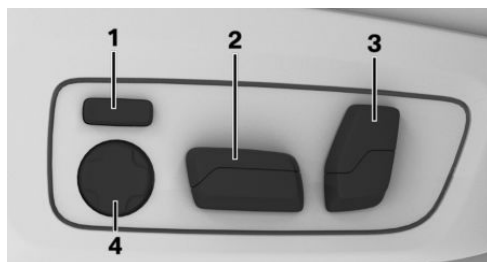
## Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

### Manually adjustable seats



- 1 Longitudinal direction
- 2 Thigh support
- 3 Seat tilt
- 4 Backrest width
- 5 Lumbar support
- 6 Height
- 7 Backrest tilt

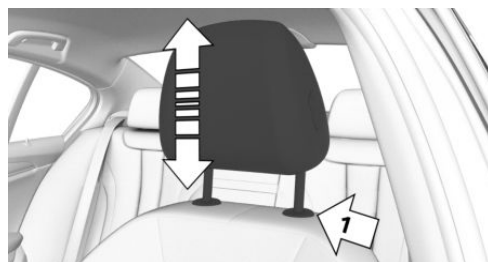
### Electrically adjustable seats



- 1 Backrest width
- 2 Height/longitudinal direction/seat tilt
- 3 Head restraint/backrest tilt
- 4 Lumbar support

### Adjusting the head restraint

#### Adjusting the height: manual head restraints

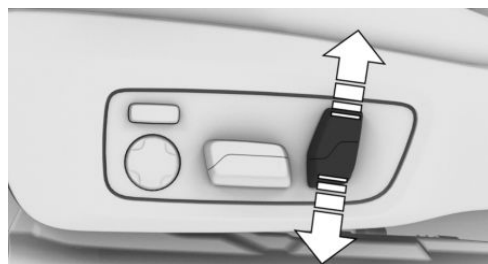


- ▶ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.

- ▶ To raise: push the head restraint up.

After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

#### Adjusting the height: M sport seat



Press switch up or down.

For equipment specification with M Carbon bucket seat:

The height of the head restraints cannot be set.

## Adjusting the distance



- ▶ Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- ▶ Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

After setting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

## Adjusting distance: M sport seat

The distance to the back of the head is adjusted via the backrest inclination.

## Adjusting the exterior mirrors



| Icon | Meaning                                         |
|------|-------------------------------------------------|
|      | Fold the exterior mirror in and out.            |
|      | Adjust the exterior mirrors.                    |
|      | Select exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor. |



Fold the exterior mirror in and out.

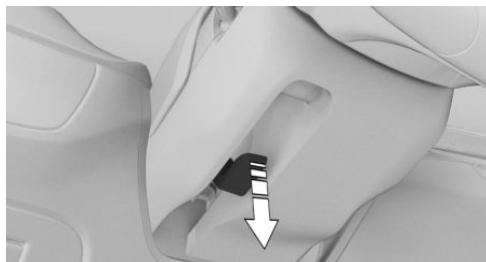


Adjust the exterior mirrors.



Select exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor.

## Adjusting the steering wheel position



1. Fold the lever down completely.
2. Grip the steering wheel with both hands and move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

## Memory function

### Principle

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- ▶ Seat position.
- ▶ Exterior mirror adjustment.
- ▶ Height of the Head-up display.

### Overview



The memory buttons are located on the front doors.



## Storing settings

1. Set the desired position.
2. **SET** Press the button. The LED illuminates.
3. Press the desired memory button 1 or 2 while the LED is illuminated. A signal sounds.

## Calling up settings

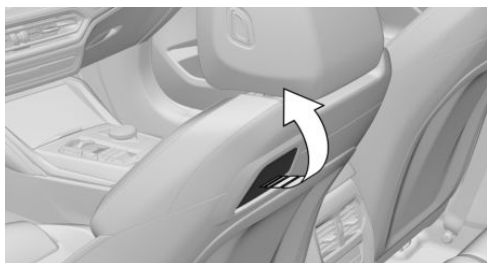
Press the desired memory button 1 or 2.

## Entering the rear

### Manual longitudinal setting

#### Fold the seat backrest forward

1. Pull lever up to the stop.



2. Fold the seat backrest forward.
3. Push the seat forward.

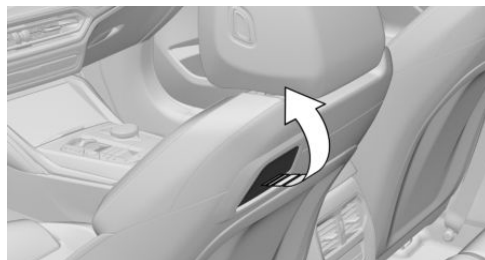
#### Push the seat backrest rearward

1. Push the seat back into the initial position.
2. Fold back the backrest to lock the seat.

## Electric longitudinal setting

#### Fold the seat backrest forward

1. Pull lever up to the stop.



2. Fold the seat backrest forward.

To make the entry to the rear easier, the seat will automatically move to the most forward position.

The process will be terminated when the switch for the forward/back direction adjustment is pressed or the backrest is reclined.

#### Push the seat backrest rearward

Push the seat backrest rearward and lock it.

The seat moves automatically to the last seat position that was stored.

## Infotainment

### Navigation destination input

1. Navigation menu
2. "Destination input"  
A search box and entered information such as the search history are displayed.
3. Select the desired entry or the search box.
4. When selecting the search box, enter characters or choose one of the POI categories displayed.

If necessary, select **OK** to display more information, e.g. to preview a map.

Apply the suggested search keywords as necessary

5. Select the desired entry.
6. "Start guidance"

## Entertainment

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the instrument panel has the following buttons.

| Button                                                                           | Function                                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Turn the button to adjust the volume.<br>Press the button to switch off the sound output. Pressing the button again restores the previous volume setting. |
|  | Change the entertainment source.                                                                                                                          |
|  | Press once: changes the station/track.<br>Press and hold: fast forward/rewind the track.                                                                  |
|  |                                                                                                                                                           |

## Using the mobile phone

### General information

After the mobile phone is connected once to the vehicle, the mobile phone can be operated using iDrive and the steering wheel buttons.

Activate Bluetooth® on the mobile phone.

### Connecting via Bluetooth®

1.  Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Connect new device"

Mobile phones in range are displayed on the control display.

5. Select the desired mobile phone.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number in the display of the mobile phone, and confirm that they match.
7. If necessary, select the connection mode:  
"Use Bluetooth"

The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

### Accepting a call

Depending on the equipment, incoming calls can be answered in several ways.

- ▶ Via iDrive:

 "Accept"



- ▶

Press the button on the steering wheel.

- ▶ Use the thumbwheel on the steering wheel to select from the list in the instrument cluster: "Accept"

### Dialing a number

1.  Communication menu
2. "More"
3. "Dial number"
4. Enter the numbers.
5.  Select the icon. The connection is established via the mobile phone to which this function has been assigned.

# On the road

## Driving

### Drive-ready state

#### Turning on the drive-ready state



1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Manual transmission: step on the clutch pedal and shift to Neutral.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

#### Turning off drive-ready state

Manual transmission:

1. With the vehicle at a standstill, press the Start/Stop button.  
The engine is switched off.

2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

1. Apply brake and engage the selector lever in position P.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.  
The READY indicator goes out and a signal tone sounds.

### Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic jam or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains switched on. The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

Manual transmission:

- ▷ By pressing the clutch pedal.

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

- ▷ By releasing the brake pedal.
- ▷ When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

## Manual transmission

### Shifting

When shifting to a lower gear, excessive RPM can damage the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. When shifting into 5th or 6th gear, press the gearshift lever to the right.

### Reverse gear

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

To overcome the resistance push the gearshift lever dynamically to the left and engage reverse gear with a forward shifting movement.

## M Steptronic Sport transmission

### Engaging selector lever position D/S, N, R



- ▷ Reverse R.
- ▷ Neutral.
- ▷  Center position, forward position.
- ▷ - Downshifting, manual.

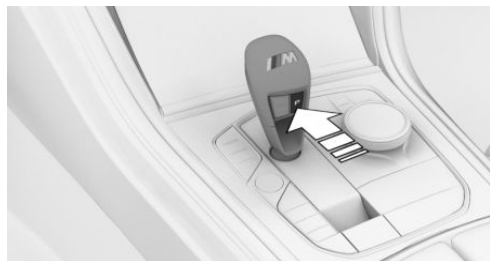
- ▷ + Upshifting, manual.
- ▷ D/S Drive mode or sequential mode.

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a gear position or reverse, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to drive off.

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

## Engaging selector lever position P

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.



Press button P.

## Parking brake

### Setting the parking brake



Pull the switch.

The LED on the switch and the indicator light in the instrument cluster are illuminated.

### Releasing the parking brake



With drive-ready state switched on:

Manual transmission: press the switch while the brake pedal is depressed.

M Steptronic Sport transmission: press the switch while pressing the brake or engaging selector lever position P.

The LED and the indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

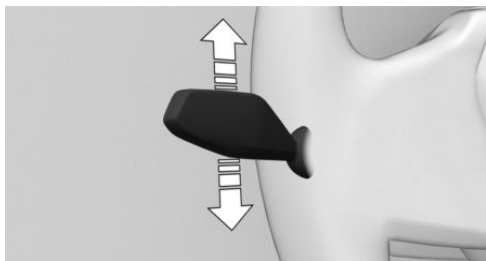
## Parking

Make sure the parking brake is engaged.

## Light and view

### Turn signal, high beams, headlight flasher

#### Turn signal



- ▷ Flashing: press the lever past the resistance point.
- ▷ Triple turn signal activation: lightly tap the lever up or down.
- ▷ Brief flashing: press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flashing.

#### High beams, headlight flasher



Press the lever forward or pull it backward.

- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.





The high beams illuminate when the low beams are switched on.

- ▶ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

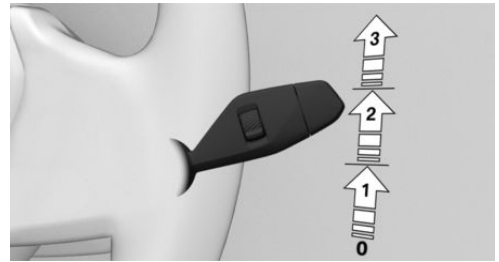
## Lights and lighting

### Buttons in the vehicle

| Icon | Function                                                     |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
|      | Exterior lighting off.<br>Daytime driving lights.            |
|      | Parking lights.                                              |
|      | Automatic headlight control.<br>Adaptive lighting functions. |
|      | Low beams.                                                   |
|      | Instrument lighting.                                         |
|      | Right roadside parking light.                                |
|      | Left roadside parking light.                                 |

## Window wiper system

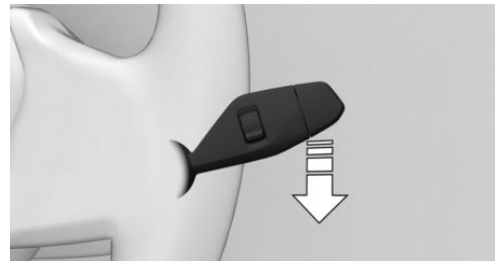
### Turning on window wiper system



Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▶ Resting position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▶ Rain sensor, position 1.
- ▶ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- ▶ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

### Turning off the window wiper system and flick wipe

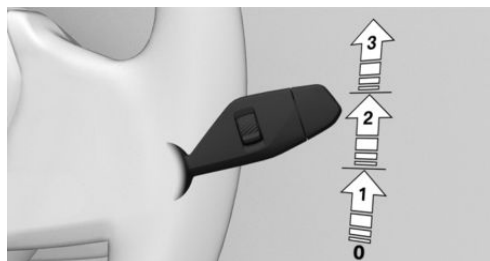


Press the lever down.

- ▶ Turning off: press the lever down until it reaches the 0 position.
- ▶ Flick wipe: press the lever down from the 0 position.

The lever automatically returns to its 0 position when released.

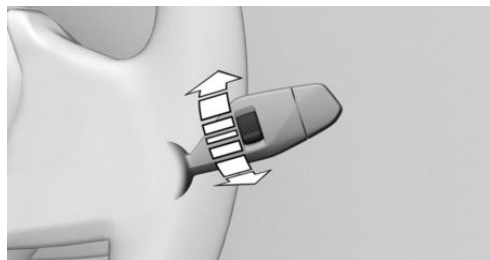
## Activating/deactivating rain sensor



Enable: press lever up once from the 0 position, arrow 1.

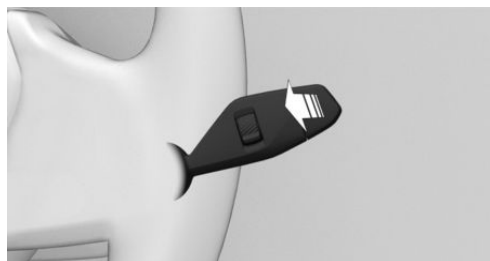
Disable: press lever back into the 0 position.

## Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel on the wiper lever.

## Cleaning the windshield



Pull the lever.

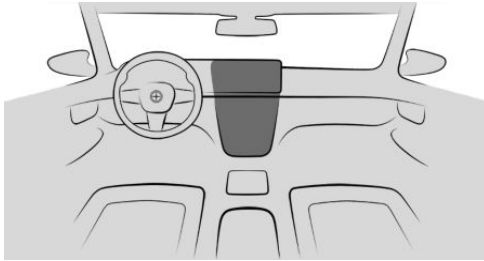
## Climate control

### Climate control functions

#### Functions in the Climate menu

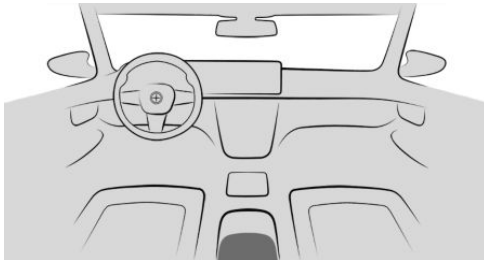
| Icon | Function                            |
|------|-------------------------------------|
|      | Automatic program.                  |
|      | Temperature.                        |
|      | Air conditioning.                   |
|      | Maximum cooling.                    |
|      | Air recirculation mode.             |
|      | Automatic recirculated-air control. |
|      | Fresh air.                          |
|      | Air flow.                           |
|      | Air distribution.                   |
|      | SYNC program.                       |
|      | Seat heating.                       |

## Buttons, automatic climate control



| Icon                                                                             | Function               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
|  | Defrost function.      |
|  | Rear window defroster. |

## Buttons, rear automatic climate control



| Icon                                                                               | Function           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
|  | Automatic program. |
|  | Temperature.       |
|  | Air distribution.  |
|  | Switching off.     |

## Intermediate stop

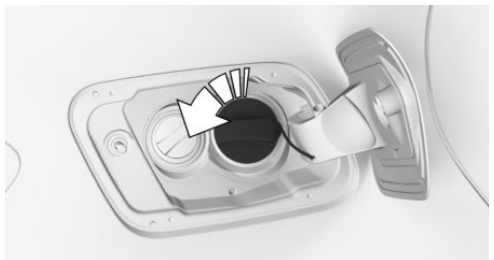
### Refueling

#### Fuel cap

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



## Wheels and tires

### Tire pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure specifications can be found in the tire inflation pressure table in the printed Owner's Manual.

### After correcting the tire pressure

If equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitor, the corrected tire pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made. With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the control display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM).

If equipped with a flat tire monitor, reinitialize the flat tire monitor.

### Checking the tire pressure

Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed:

- ▷ At least twice a month.
- ▷ Before embarking on an extended trip.

### Cleaning the wheels

The friction during hard braking may produce brake dust and make the rims dirty. Brake dust can be removed by cleaning the rims. BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning agents from BMW.

### Electronic oil measurement

#### Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving with the combustion engine running.

#### Displaying the engine oil level

1. ■■ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

### Adding engine oil

#### General information

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

#### Adding engine oil

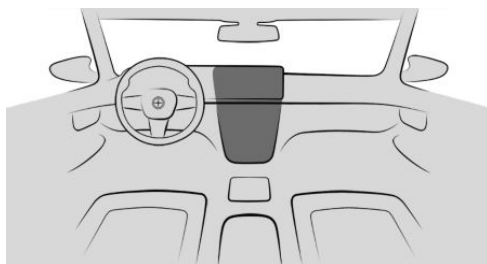
1. Opening the hood.
2. Open the lid counterclockwise.



3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the lid.

## Providing assistance

### Hazard warning system



Hazard warning system button

## ConnectedDrive

### BMW Assistance

Contact BMW Assistance for information and support for all aspects of the vehicle.

1.  Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "BMW Assistance"
4. Select the desired service.  
Follow the displays on the control display.  
A voice connection is established.

### BMW Teleservices

Teleservices are services that help to maintain vehicle mobility.

Teleservices can comprise the following services:

- ▶ BMW Roadside Assistance.
- ▶ BMW Accident Assistance.
- ▶ Teleservice Call.
- ▶ Your authorized service center.

# Dashboard

## Vehicle features and options

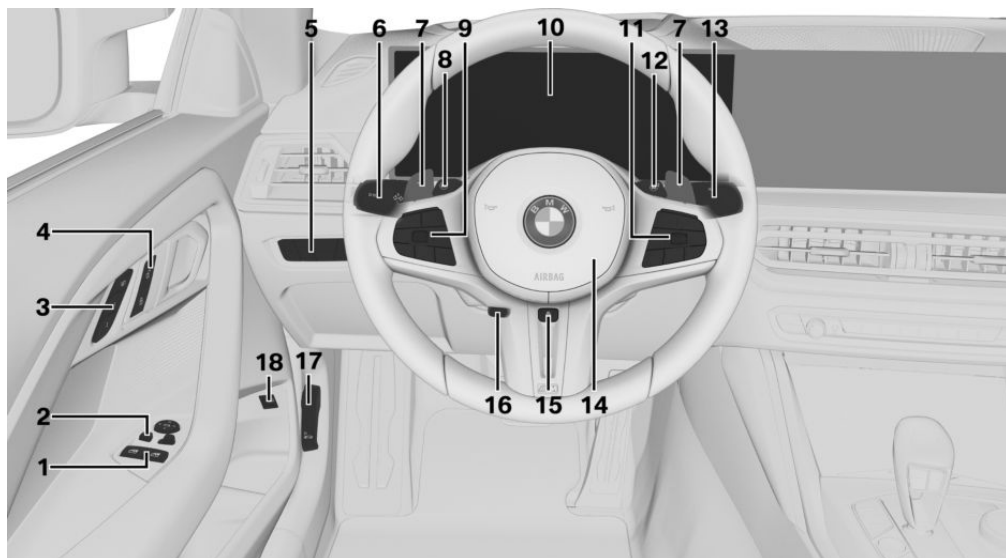
This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently

available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1  Power windows 87

2 Exterior mirror adjustment button 103

3 Seating comfort features

 Memory function 105

4 Central locking system 82

 Unlocking

 Locking

5 Lights

 Light switch 152

 Exterior lights off  
Daytime driving lights 154



Parking lights [153](#)



Automatic headlight control [152](#)  
Adaptive lighting functions [155](#)  
Automatic High Beam Assistant [155](#)



Low beams [153](#)



Instrument lighting [157](#)



Right roadside parking light [153](#)



Left roadside parking light [153](#)

## 6 Pitman arm, left



Turn signal [127](#)



High beams, headlight flasher [127](#)



Automatic High Beam Assistant [155](#)



Trip data [146](#)  
G-Meter [147](#)

## 7 Shift paddles [117](#)

## 8 M1 [181](#)



## 9 Steering wheel buttons, left



Manual Speed Limiter [194](#)



Depending on the equipment:  
Cruise Control on/off [196](#)



Depending on the equipment:  
Active Cruise Control on/off [199](#)



Cruise Control: store the speed  
Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed [205](#)



Continuing cruise control



Interrupting Cruise Control



Active Cruise Control: increase distance



Active Cruise Control: reduce distance



Cruise Control rocker switch

## 10 Instrument cluster [133](#)

## 11 Steering wheel buttons, right



Displaying menu bar in instrument cluster [133](#)



Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)



Voice activation system [51](#)



Selecting menu contents in instrument cluster [133](#)

Changing the station/track, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)



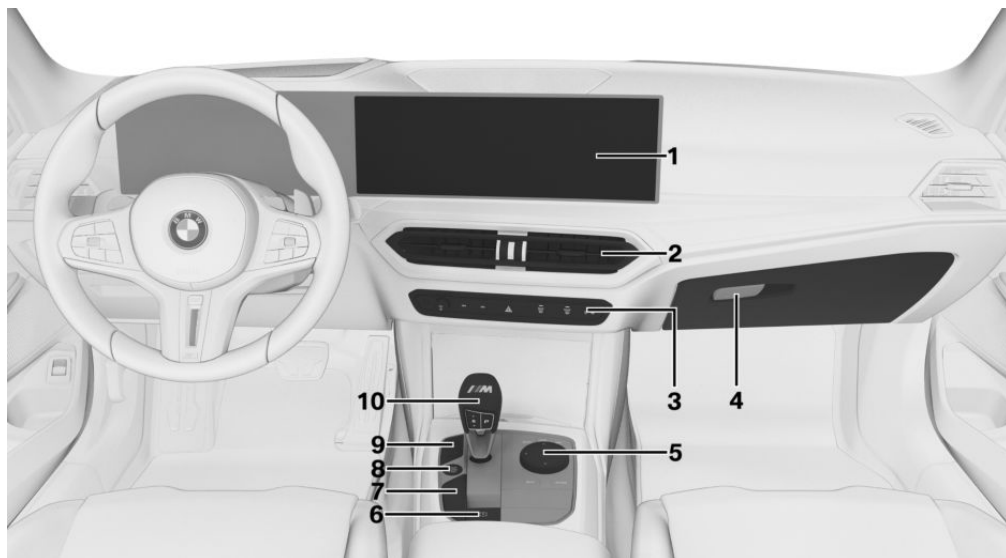
Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)



Thumbwheel for selecting configuration menus for instrument cluster and Head-up display [133](#)  
Using infotainment selection lists in the instrument cluster [142](#)

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>12  M2 181</p> <p>13 Pitman arm, right</p> <p> Wipers 128</p> <p> Rain sensor 129</p> <p> Cleaning the windshield 130</p> <p>14  Horn, entire surface</p> | <p>15  Steering wheel heating 105</p> <p>16 Adjusting the steering wheel 105</p> <p>17  Unlocking the hood 285</p> <p>18  Opening and closing cargo area 77</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## In the vicinity of the center console



- |                                                      |                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1 Control display 48</p> <p>2 Ventilation 229</p> | <p>3  Hazard warning system 300</p> <p>Climate control 223</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|



Defrost function [229](#)Rear window defroster [229](#)

Radio/multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication [6](#)



Adjusting the volume



Station/title forward



Station/title back

**4** Glove compartment [240](#)**5** Controller with buttons [48](#)**6**  Parking brake [124](#)Automatic Hold [125](#)**7**M MODE [183](#)M Setup [181](#)Sound control [132](#)**8**Turning the drive-ready state on/off [113](#)**9**Auto Start/Stop function [113](#)Parking assistance systems [208](#)Dynamic Stability Control [186](#)

**10** Manual transmission: gearshift lever [116](#)  
 M Steptronic Sport transmission: selector lever [117](#)

## In the vicinity of the headliner



- |                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1  Emergency Call, SOS <a href="#">302</a></p>                      | <p>4  Reading lights <a href="#">158</a></p>  |
| <p>2  Operating the electric glass sun-roof <a href="#">89</a></p>     | <p>5  Interior lights <a href="#">157</a></p> |
| <p>3  Indicator light, front passenger airbag <a href="#">161</a></p> |                                                                                                                                |

# Sensors of the vehicle

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

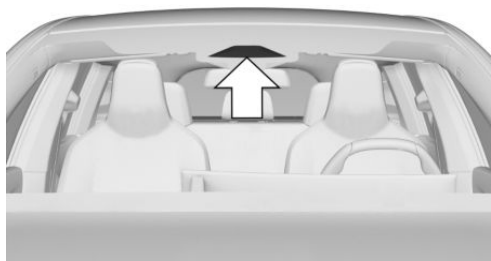
## Overview

Depending on the equipment, the following cameras and sensors are installed in the vehicle:

- ▶ Camera behind the windshield.
- ▶ Rearview camera.
- ▶ Front radar sensor.
- ▶ Radar sensors, side, rear.
- ▶ Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▶ Ultrasonic sensors, side.

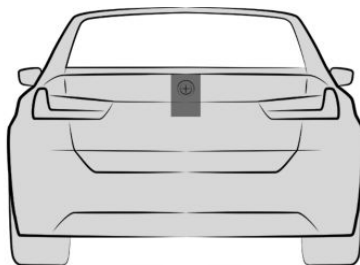
## Cameras

### Camera behind the windshield



The camera behind the windshield is located near the interior mirror.

### Rearview camera



The rearview camera is located in the handle on the rear end.

### Functional requirement of the cameras

The areas of the cameras are clean and clear.

Additional information:

- ▶ Washing the vehicle, refer to page 308.
- ▶ Vehicle care, refer to page 309.

### System limits of the cameras

The function of the cameras can be limited or may indicate something wrong, for instance in the following situations:

- ▶ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▶ On steep hills, in steep depressions or in tight curves.
- ▶ When the camera field of view is covered, for instance by a fogged up windshield or labels.
- ▶ If the camera lens is dirty or damaged.
- ▶ With open doors or open cargo area.
- ▶ When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections, e.g., because of a setting sun.
- ▶ When it is dark outside.

- ▶ The camera has overheated due to excessive temperatures and temporarily turned off.
- ▶ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

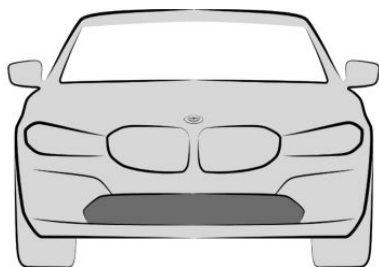
## Radar sensors

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

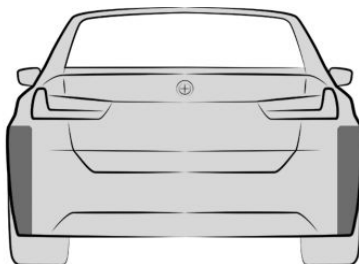
The vehicle radar sensors and thus also the driver assistance systems can be impaired by external influences, e.g., interference. There is a risk of accident. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

### Front radar sensor



The front radar sensor is located in the front bumper.

### Radar sensors, side, rear



The radar sensors are located on the side in the rear bumper.

### Functional requirement of the radar sensors

The areas of the radar sensors are clean and clear.

Additional information:

- ▶ Washing the vehicle, refer to page [308](#).
- ▶ Vehicle care, refer to page [309](#).

### System limits of the radar sensors

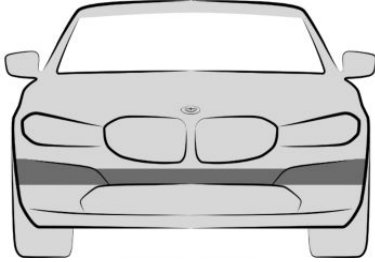
The function of the radar sensors can be limited or not available, for instance in the following situations:

- ▶ In case of dirty sensors.
- ▶ In case of iced-up sensors.
- ▶ If sensors are covered, such as by labels, films or a license-plate carrier.
- ▶ If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- ▶ If the radiation range of the sensors is covered, e.g., by protruding cargo.
- ▶ When the field of view of the sensors is covered, e.g., by garage walls, hedges, snow hills, vehicles or trailers.
- ▶ After improper paint work on the vehicle in the area of the sensors.
- ▶ On steep hilltops or in sharp dips in the road.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

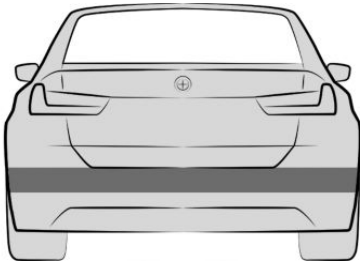
## Ultrasonic sensors

### Ultrasonic sensors, front



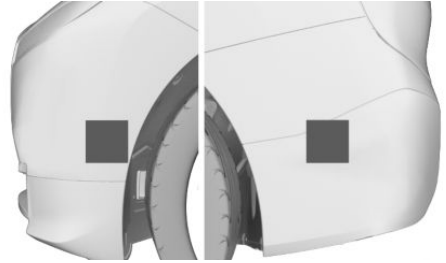
The ultrasonic sensors of the parking assistance systems are located in the front bumper.

### Ultrasonic sensors, rear



The ultrasonic sensors of the parking assistance systems are located in the rear bumper.

### Ultrasonic sensors, side



The ultrasonic sensors of the parking assistance systems are located on the side in the front and rear bumpers.

### Functional requirement of the ultrasonic sensors

The areas of the ultrasonic sensors are clean and clear.

Additional information:

- ▶ Washing the vehicle, refer to page [308](#).
- ▶ Vehicle care, refer to page [309](#).

### System limits of the ultrasonic sensors

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- ▶ If the sensors are dirty or covered, e.g., by stickers.
- ▶ If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- ▶ After improper paint work on the vehicle in the area of the sensors.
- ▶ For small children and animals.
- ▶ For persons with certain clothing, for instance jacket.
- ▶ With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- ▶ In case of external interference with the ultrasonics, for instance from passing ve-



hicles, loud machines or other ultrasonic sources.

- ▷ Under certain weather conditions, e.g., high moisture, wet conditions, snowfall, cold, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- ▷ With tow bars and trailer hitches of other vehicles.
- ▷ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ With moving objects.
- ▷ With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.
- ▷ With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.
- ▷ For objects with a fine surface or objects such as wire mesh fences.
- ▷ For objects with porous surfaces.
- ▷ With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- ▷ Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can be outside of the detection ranges of the sensors.
- ▷ With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- ▷ With plants and bushes.
- ▷ In automatic car washes.
- ▷ In the event of uneven floors, e.g. speed bumps.
- ▷ Due to heavy exhaust.
- ▷ Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the ultrasonic sensors.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.



# Operating condition of the vehicle

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## General information

Depending on the situation, the vehicle is in one of the three states:

- ▷ Idle state.
- ▷ Standby state.
- ▷ Drive-ready state.

## Idle state

### Principle

When the vehicle is in idle state, it is switched off.

### General information

The vehicle is in idle state prior to opening from the outside and after exiting and locking.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

#### **Warning**

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

## Establishing the sleep mode automatically

The sleep mode is established automatically, such as in the following situations:

- ▷ After several minutes, if no operation takes place on the vehicle.
- ▷ If the charge state of the vehicle battery is low.
- ▷ Depending on the configuration via iDrive: one or both front doors will be opened after driving when exiting the vehicle.



In some situations, the idle state is not set automatically, for instance during a phone call or when the low beams are switched on.

## Establishing idle state when opening the front doors

After a trip, the sleep mode can be established by opening the front doors. For this purpose, all passengers must exit the vehicle.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Turn off after opening door"

## Establishing the sleep mode manually

To establish idle state in the vehicle after completion of trip:



Press and hold the button on the radio until the OFF indicator on the instrument cluster goes out.

# Standby state

## Principle

When standby state is switched on, most functions can be used while the vehicle is stationary. Desired settings can be adjusted.

## General information

The vehicle is in the standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

## Manually setting to standby

### General information

Standby can be switched back on after the vehicle is automatically set to idle state.

### Via button on the radio



Press the button on the radio. The control display and the instrument cluster illuminate.

### Via start/stop button



Press the Start/Stop button. The control display and the instrument cluster illuminate.

## Display in the instrument cluster



OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. The drivetrain is switched off and standby state switched on.

# Drive-ready state

## Principle

Turning on drive-ready state corresponds to starting the engine.

## General information

Some vehicle functions can only be used with the drive-ready state switched on.



## Safety information

### **DANGER**

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

### **Warning**

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

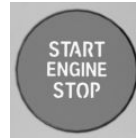
- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

### **NOTICE**

Repeated attempts to start the engine or repeated starting of the vehicle in rapid succession can cause the starter to overheat. This also results in unburned or inadequately burned fuel, and can cause the catalytic converter to overheat. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid repeated starting of the vehicle, particularly repeated starting in rapid succession.

## Turning on the drive-ready state

### General information



Drive-ready state is switched on via the Start/Stop button.

### Turning on the drive-ready state

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Manual transmission: step on the clutch pedal and shift to Neutral.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Most of the indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster illuminate for a varied length of time.

### Gasoline engine

Depending on the motorization, the full drive power may not be available for approximately 30 seconds after starting the engine. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate as usual.

### Display in the instrument cluster

The activated drive-ready state is indicated in the instrument cluster, depending on the equipment, by the display of information required for driving or the READY display.

### Turning off drive-ready state

Manual transmission:

1. When the vehicle is stationary, apply the parking brake.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.  
The engine is switched off. The vehicle switches into standby state.
3. Shift into first gear or reverse.



M Steptronic Sport transmission:

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The engine is switched off. The vehicle switches into standby state.

# BMW iDrive

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## Display and operating concept

### Principle

BMW iDrive is the vehicle's display and operating concept and includes a wide range of functions.

### General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, the functions can be operated as follows:

- ▶ Via the control display.
- ▶ Via the Controller.
- ▶ Via the touchpad.
- ▶ Via the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant.
- ▶ Via the operating elements on the steering wheel.

Additional information:

Instrument cluster, refer to page 133.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from surrounding traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is

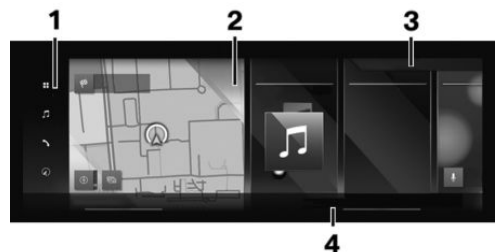
a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

### Main menu

### General information

The main menu is divided into different areas.

### Overview



- 1 Menu bar
- 2 Widgets
- 3 Status information
- 4 Climate bar, climate [223](#)

### Menu bar

#### Menu Apps

 Access to apps and vehicle functions. A filter can be selected. The last selected filter is stored. If necessary, change the filter to see the apps you want.

- ▶ "All apps": All apps and functions are displayed.
- ▶ "Infotainment apps": Only infotainment apps are displayed.
- ▶ "Vehicle apps": Only vehicle adjustment functions are displayed.

## Media menu

 Access to entertainment system functions, e.g., radio stations or external device pairing.

## Communication menu

 Access to telephone and message function as well as pairing and management of mobile devices, e.g., smartphones.

## Navigation menu

 Access to navigation system, destination entry, and traffic information. Configurable map views and other functions, such as points of interest.

## Apple CarPlay® menu

 Depending on national-market version with associated function: Access to Apple CarPlay. Apple CarPlay enables the secure use of certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone via iDrive.

## Android Auto® menu

 Depending on national-market version with associated function: Access to Android Auto. Android Auto enables the secure use of certain functions of a compatible Android smartphone via iDrive.

## Widgets

Widgets show real-time information and dynamic content such as the navigation map. The widgets also serve as buttons and allow jumping to the relevant menu.

## Status information

### General information

The status field can be found in the upper area of the control display. Status information is displayed in the form of icons. Depending on the equipment and national-market version, different icons are available.

## Telephone status information

| Icon                                                                              | Meaning           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
|  | Active call.      |
|  | Signal strength.  |
|  | SIM card missing. |

## Entertainment status information

| Icon                                                                              | Meaning                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
|  | USB audio.                      |
|  | Bluetooth audio.                |
|  | Smartphone audio.               |
|  | Connected Music with Spotify.   |
|  | Time shift.                     |
|  | Wi-Fi.                          |
|  | Apple CarPlay.                  |
|  | Android Auto.                   |
|  | Satellite radio is switched on. |

## Status information for notifications

| Icon                                                                                | Meaning                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
|  | Number of notifications.      |
|  | Check Control message.        |
|  | Suppress private information. |
|  | Do not disturb.               |
|  | Notification.                 |

Additional information:

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.

## Other status information

| Icon                                                                             | Meaning                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
|  | Sound output active.                      |
|  | Sound output deactivated.                 |
|  | Activation word active.                   |
|  | BMW ID or driver profile.                 |
|  | Destination guidance active.              |
|  | Go to quick access.                       |
|  | Wireless charging active.                 |
|  | Park Distance Control: sound active.      |
|  | Park Distance Control: sound deactivated. |

## Input and display

### Letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be entered using the controller, touchpad, control display, or voice control, depending on vehicle equipment.

| Icon                                                                               | Function                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
|   | Change between capital and lower-case letters. |
|  | Enter a blank space.                           |
|  | Switching between languages.                   |
|  | Use voice control.                             |
|  | Confirm entry.                                 |
|  | Shift the input area to the left or right.     |

### Entry comparison

When entering data from a database such as contacts, the selection is gradually narrowed down for each character entered, with characters being added as necessary.

## Activating/deactivating the functions

Some menu items are preceded by an icon. Selecting the menu item enables or disables the function.

| Icon                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Meaning                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
|    | Function is activated.   |
|    | Function is deactivated. |

## Enabling/disabling audible feedback

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Sound"
5. Select the desired setting.

## Quick access

The quick link provides access to shortcuts, certain settings, and app recommendations.

| Input            | Operation                                                                                                         |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Show quick link. | Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.<br>Slide the controller up.<br>— Tap the icon on the status bar. |
| Hide quick link. | Swipe from the bottom up on the control display.<br>Slide the controller down.                                    |

## Activating/deactivating pop-ups

For some functions, pop-ups are displayed automatically on the control display. Some of these pop-ups can be activated or deactivated.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Pop-ups"
5. Select the desired setting.

## Shortcuts

### General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the shortcuts and called up directly, for instance radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries.

### Storing a function

1. Select the desired function.
2. Press and hold the desired function.
3. "Add to shortcuts"

Shortcuts can only be created with an active BMW ID or a driver profile.

### Executing a function

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. Tap the desired shortcut.

The function will work immediately. This means for instance that the connection is established when a phone number is selected.

### Deleting shortcuts

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. Press and hold the desired shortcut.
3. "Delete shortcut"

## BMW Curved Display

### Principle

The BMW Curved Display is a single-screen display in the vehicle that is curved towards the driver. The BMW Curved Display comprises the instrument cluster on the driver's side and the control display on the center console.

### General information

Follow instructions for cleaning the BMW Curved Display in the Care chapter.

Additional information:

Caring for special components, refer to page 311.

### Overview



**1** Instrument cluster [133](#)

**2** Control display [46](#)

## Control display

### Principle

The iDrive functions are displayed on the control display.

### Safety information

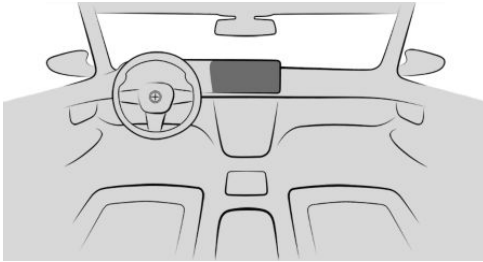
#### **Warning**

Devices connected to the vehicle via a cable, such as mobile phones or loose objects, can be thrown through the vehicle interior while driving, such as in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

**Warning**

Objects in the area in the front of the control display can slip and damage the control display. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not place objects in the area in front of the control display.

## Overview



Control display

## Switching the control display on/off automatically

The control display is turned on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or as soon as the control display is needed for operation.

In certain situations, the control display is switched off automatically, for instance if no operation is performed on the vehicle for several minutes.

## Switching the control display on/off manually

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. "Screen off"

Tap the control display to turn it on again.

## Setting the brightness

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Displays"

4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Make the desired setting.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness control may not be clearly visible.

## System limits

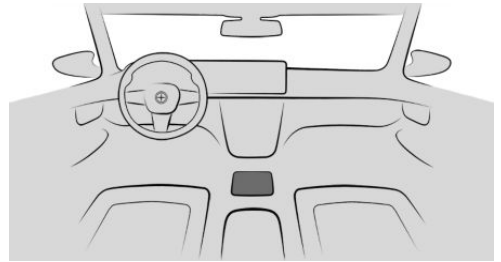
In the case of very high temperatures on the control display, for instance due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shade or air conditioning system, the normal functions are restored.

## Controller

### General information

The buttons can be used to open the menus directly.

### Overview



Controller

### Buttons on the Controller

**Button Function**

Call up the main menu.



Call up the Media/Radio menu.

## Button Function

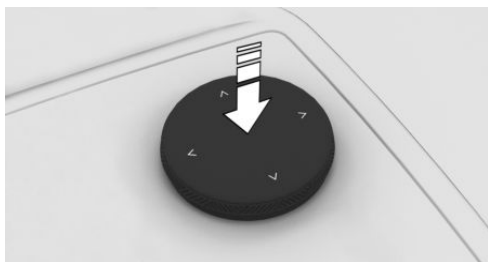
|        |                                                    |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------|
| TEL    | Go to Phone menu.                                  |
| MAP    | Call up the navigation map.                        |
| NAV    | Call up the destination input menu for navigation. |
| BACK   | Go to previous menu.                               |
| OPTION | Call up the Options menu.                          |

## Operation

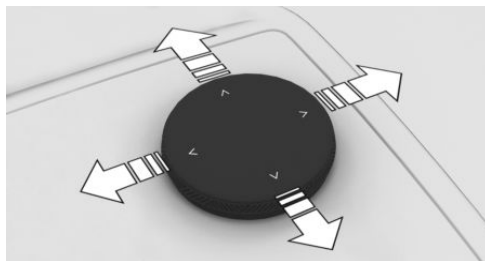
- ▶ Turn to switch between menu items, for example.



- ▶ Press to select a menu item, for example.



- ▶ Slide in four directions to switch between menus, for example.



## Operating via the Controller

### Opening the main menu

- HOME Press the button.

The main menu is displayed.

### Selecting menu items

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.
2. Press the Controller.

### Selecting a widget

1. Slide the Controller in the main menu to the right.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired widget is selected.
3. Press the Controller.

### Switching between menus

A new display opens after a menu item is selected.

- ▶ Slide the Controller to the left.  
The current menu closes and the previous menu is displayed.

- BACK Press the button.

The current menu closes and the previous menu is displayed.



## Entering letters and numbers

### Input

1. Turn the Controller: select letters or numbers.
2. **OK** : confirm entry.

Setting the system language, refer to page [53](#).

### Deleting an entry

| Icon                                                                             | Function                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Press Controller: delete a letter or number.             |
|  | Hold the Controller down: delete all letters or numbers. |

### Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Turn the Controller to the left or right quickly.
2. Select the first letter of the desired entry.  
The first entry of the selected letter is displayed in the list.

## Operation via touchpad

### General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, some iDrive functions can be operated with the controller touchpad.

### Selecting functions

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"

4. "Touchpad"
5. Select the desired setting.

### Entering letters and numbers

- ▶ Enter characters as they are displayed on the control display.
- ▶ Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods, so that the letter can be clearly recognized.
- ▶ The set language determines what input is possible. Where necessary, enter special characters via the Controller.

Setting the system language, refer to page [53](#).

### Entering special characters

| Function              | Operation                                             |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Delete a character.   | Swipe to the left on the touchpad.                    |
| Enter a blank space.  | Swipe to the right in the center of the touchpad.     |
| Enter a hyphen.       | Swipe to the right in the upper area of the touchpad. |
| Enter an under-score. | Swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad. |

### Using the map

The map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad.

Tap the map on the control display and then continue operation using the touchpad.

| Function      | Operation                           |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| Move map.     | Swipe in the appropriate direction. |
| Display menu. | Tap once.                           |



## Using alphabetical lists

Alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries permit a direct jump to letters for which an entry exists.

Enter the first letter on the touchpad.

The first entry of the entered letter is displayed in the list.

## Operation via control display

### General information

Depending on the equipment version, the control display is equipped with a touchscreen.

You can tap on menu items and widgets.

Touch the control display with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

### Opening the main menu

 Tap on the icon.

The main menu is displayed.

### Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. If necessary,  tap the icon.
2. Press and hold the widget.
3. Make the desired adjustment:

- ▷  Tap on the icon.

A new widget can be selected.

- ▷  Tap on the icon.

The widget is deleted.

- ▷ Press and hold the widget and drag to the left or right.

The widget is moved to the desired position.

## Sorting apps

To resort the app icons, press and hold the desired icon and move it to the desired location.

## Switching between menus

A new display opens after a menu item is selected.

Swipe from left to right on the control display.

The current menu closes and the previous menu is displayed.

## Calling up the context menu

Depending on the menu item, a context menu with additional options can be displayed.

Press and hold the desired menu item.

The menu consists of various areas, for instance:

- ▷ "General help": Go to the Integrated Owner's Manual.
- ▷ "Add to shortcuts": define menu item as shortcut.

## Entering letters and numbers

### Input

1. If necessary, tap the  icon or control display.
2. Enter desired letters and numbers.

## Deleting an entry

| Icon                                                                                | Function                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Tap icon: delete a letter or a number.                  |
|  | Press and hold the icon: delete all letters or numbers. |

## Using the map

The navigation map can be moved on the control display.

| Function            | Operation                           |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Move map.           | Swipe in the appropriate direction. |
| Enlarge/shrink map. | Drag in or out with the fin-map.    |
| Display menu.       | Tap once.                           |

## Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Tap the letter in front of the list.  
A letter box is displayed.
2. Tap the first letter of the desired entry.  
The first entry of the selected letter is displayed in the list.

# BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

## Principle

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is a personal assistant that enables natural voice operation of various vehicle functions. The Personal Assistant makes it easier to operate the vehicle by providing proactive suggestions and automating habits.

## General information

- ▶ BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available depending on national-market version.
- ▶ The system includes special microphones on the driver side and the front passenger side.
- ▶ Say commands at a normal volume. Speaking directly into the microphone does not improve voice recognition.

- ▶ Say the commands and numbers fluently as well as with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- ▶ >...< identifies commands that can be spoken.

## Functional requirements

- ▶ A language that is supported by the Personal Assistant must be set via iDrive. Setting the system language, refer to page 53.
- ▶ Always say commands in the configured system language.

For the full range of functions, the following functions should be activated, set or booked:

- ▶ Online speech processing, refer to page 54.
- ▶ For all settings under Data protection, refer to page 62.
- ▶ Activation word, refer to page 52.
- ▶ BMW ID or a driver profile.
- ▶ Relevant ConnectedDrive services from the ConnectedDrive Store.
- ▶ Get suggestions, refer to page 54.

## Activating the voice control system

### General information

There are various methods for activating the voice control feature:

- ▶  Press the button on the steering wheel briefly.  
The microphone on the driver's side is active.
- ▶ Speaking the activation word.  
The microphones on the driver's or front passenger's side are active with the following voice control, depending on where the activation word was spoken.



Then say the command. The activation word and the command can be spoken without pause in one sentence.

## Microphone button on steering wheel



1. Press button briefly.
2. Say the command.

## Activation word

### General information

Saying the activation word will start the Personal Assistant. The Personal Assistant listens.

### Preset activation word

>Hello BMW<: The default activation word can be activated and deactivated.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Wake word"
7. ""Hello BMW""

### Personal activation word

In addition to the preset activation word, a personal activation word can be set up with an active BMW ID or a driver profile. The personal activation word can also be changed or deleted.

The activation word should consist of multiple syllables to ensure good recognition.

>Hello<: The additional phrase is not necessary for the activation word and does not need to be spoken.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"

3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Wake word"
7. "Personal wake word"
8. "Set"
9. "Start recording"

### Activation word from third-party providers

Depending on the national-market version, some third-party providers provide digital voice assistants such as Siri or Amazon Alexa.

To use Siri, the smartphone must be connected via Apple CarPlay.

Supported voice assistants can be used with a connected smartphone in the vehicle.

The activation word from connected third-party providers can be used in addition to your preset or personal activation word from BMW.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Additional speech assistants"
6. Select the desired setting.

## Canceling voice control



- > Press the button on the steering wheel again.
- > >Cancel<
- > Slide the Controller to the right or left.
- > Press the Controller.

## Possible commands

### General information

Commands can be used to give instructions or ask questions, with the Personal Assistant providing assistance.

For example, you can call contacts, navigate to an address, apply settings, or ask questions about a vehicle function.

Most content on the control display can be spoken as commands, e.g., menu items or list entries.

## Help for voice control

- ▶ ›Voice commands‹: have possible example commands suggested.
- ▶ ›General information on voice control‹: have information on the operating principle of the voice control announced.
- ▶ ›Help‹: have tips and example commands for voice control announced.
- ▶ Additional example commands for the current context are displayed in the widget of the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant.

## Sample commands

- ▶ ›Call John Smith‹
- ▶ ›Drive me to JFK airport‹
- ▶ ›Play a classical music station‹
- ▶ ›Is my tire pressure still OK?‹
- ▶ ›Activate the climate control‹
- ▶ ›Increase the ACC distance‹
- ▶ ›Sport mode‹

Additional example commands can be displayed on the control display.

1.  Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Help"
5. "Example commands"

Sample commands for the current context are displayed in the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant widget.

Additional information:

Adjust widgets, refer to page [50](#).

## Menu items

The Personal Assistant can bring up menu items directly. Say the menu items as they are displayed on the control display. You do not have to follow the order of the menu items when speaking them out loud.

1. Activate the voice control system.
2. ›Media‹
3. ›Presets‹

The stored stations are displayed on the control display.

## Owner's Manual via voice operation

You can ask simple questions about vehicle functions and the operation of the vehicle.

The voice activation system and the feedback it provides do not replace the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual. The function is available depending on the national-market version. The speech recognition and quality of the feedback may vary.

Example command: ›How can the passenger airbag be deactivated?‹

The Personal Assistant returns feedback. When stationary, the section of the integrated Owner's Manual is displayed on the control display.

## Settings

### Setting the system language

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Language"
5. Select the desired setting.

### Setting the response length

You can set the Personal Assistant to use standard dialog or a short version. In case of the short version, the announcements by the



Personal Assistant are played back in an abbreviated version.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Response length"
7. Select the desired setting.

## Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during inquiries of the Personal Assistant. The function can be disabled if requests are often canceled unintentionally, for instance due to background noise or conversations in the vehicle.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Speaking during voice output"

## Suggestions

### General information

The Personal Assistant helps with individual suggestions.

### Activating/deactivating suggestions

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Receive suggestions"

### Adapting suggestions

Suggestions can be adapted, for example, by category or to output a signal tone.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. Select the desired setting.

## Online speech processing

Online speech processing improves the quality of the speech recognition and search results for points of interest. To use the functions, data is transmitted to a service provider via an encrypted connection and stored locally there. An active ConnectedDrive contract is required for online voice processing. ConnectedDrive is available depending on the national-market version. Online speech processing is not available in all languages.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Online speech processing"

## Voice control from third-party providers

Depending on vehicle equipment, third-party voice control can be enabled by pressing and holding the microphone button on the steering wheel.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Long press"
6. Select the desired setting.

## Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button during the voice guidance until the desired volume is set.

The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.

## Using the voice activation of the smartphone

Depending on the device, a smartphone connected to the vehicle can be used via voice control.

The device must be connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

1. Press and hold the  button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.

The voice activation of the smartphone is activated.

If activation is successful, a confirmation appears on the control display.

2. Press and hold the  button on the steering wheel to cancel voice control of the smartphone.

## Amazon Alexa Car Integration

### Principle

Amazon Alexa Car Integration is available depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version. Alexa is a digital assistant from Amazon. With Amazon Alexa Car Integration, Alexa can be used in the vehicle. For safety reasons, some Alexa functions may not be fully available in the vehicle when driving.

### Functional requirement

- ▷ A BMW ID or driver profile is activated.
- ▷ An active Amazon account must exist.

## Activating Amazon Alexa Car Integration

Amazon Alexa Car Integration is activated in the vehicle and My BMW app if necessary.

Follow the instructions from the Amazon Alexa app to set it up in the vehicle.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Amazon Alexa"

After setting it up, use Amazon Alexa in the vehicle as follows:

Say the activation word "Alexa" and the desired command.

Information about the active function is displayed on the control display. If the function is restricted, reconnect Bluetooth and Wi-Fi as necessary.

## Automating routines

### General information

The Personal Assistant can automate routines, for instance the automatic opening of windows in the same place. Rules are created for this purpose, which can be activated and deactivated at any time.

## Activating/deactivating routines

1.  Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Automate habits"
4. Select the desired setting.

## System limits

- ▷ The Personal Assistant provides information about vehicle functions that may not be installed in the vehicle.

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

- ▷ Certain noises can be detected and may lead to problems. Keep the doors and windows closed.

- ▶ Noises from the front passenger or occupants can impair the system. Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.
- ▶ Major language dialects can cause problems with the speech recognition feature.
- ▶ A poor data connection influences the response time of the Personal Assistant and the Search.

## Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

### Principle

Various connection types are available for using mobile devices in the vehicle. The connection type to select depends on the mobile device and the desired function.

### General information

Detailed information on the functions and connection types can be found in the following media in the Owner's Manual under the specified keyword:

- ▶ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
- ▶ Printed Owner's Manual for navigation, communication and entertainment.

The following information sources can also be used:

- ▶ Driver's Guide app.
- ▶ Driver's Guide Web.

## Safety information

### **Warning**

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from surrounding traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

## Overview

The following overview shows possible functions and the suitable connection types for them. The range of functions depends on the vehicle equipment and the mobile device.

| Function                                                                                                        | Connection type                                    | Icon on the control display                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Making calls via the hands-free system.<br>Using phone functions via iDrive.<br>Keyword: calling via Bluetooth. | Bluetooth.<br>Keyword: Bluetooth connection.       |                                                                                         |
| Playing music from a mobile device.<br>Keyword: audio.                                                          | Bluetooth audio.<br>Keyword: Bluetooth connection. |      |
| Calling without a mobile phone.<br>Keyword: calling with the Personal eSIM.                                     | Personal eSIM.<br>Keyword: Personal eSIM.          | <br> |



| Function                                                                                     | Connection type                                                                                              | Icon on the control display                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Data exchange between mobile device and vehicle.                                             | Wi-Fi.<br>Keyword: vehicle WLAN.                                                                             |  |
| Use Internet access via the personal hotspot.                                                | Wi-Fi via personal hotspot.<br>Keyword: personal hotspot.                                                    |  |
| Using Apple CarPlay via iDrive and via voice control.<br>Keyword: Apple CarPlay preparation. | Bluetooth and Wi-Fi.<br>Keyword: Bluetooth connection and vehicle Wi-Fi.                                     |  |
| Using Android Auto via iDrive and via voice control.<br>Keyword: Android Auto preparation.   | Bluetooth and Wi-Fi.<br>Keyword: Bluetooth connection and vehicle Wi-Fi.                                     |  |
| Playing music from a USB device.<br>Keyword: audio.                                          | USB.<br>Keyword: USB connection.<br>Additional information:<br>USB port, refer to page <a href="#">237</a> . |  |

# BMW Remote Software Upgrade

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page [8](#).

## BMW Remote Software Upgrade

### Principle

Remote Software Upgrade can be used to update the entire software of the vehicle. This makes new functions, functional enhancements or quality improvements available.

### General information

BMW recommends performing the Remote Software Upgrade as soon as it becomes available.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

### Functional requirements

- ▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract.
- ▷ The integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.
- ▷ Cellular network reception.
- ▷ Consent to transmit the corresponding data was given in the Data Protection menu.

Additional information:

Data protection, refer to page [62](#).

### Search for an upgrade

#### Functional requirement

Standby must be turned on to search for a Remote Software Upgrade.

#### Automatic search

The vehicle regularly searches for updates in the background.

#### Manual search

1.  Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Search for upgrades"
6. Follow the instructions on the control display.

## Download of an upgrade

### Automatic download

If available, the data for a Remote Software Upgrade is automatically downloaded to the vehicle. No download consent is required.

### Via BMW app

If an upgrade is available, information about the new software version is displayed in the BMW app.

The data for the upgrade can then be downloaded to a mobile device, for instance via an existing WLAN connection.

The data can then be transmitted from the mobile device to the vehicle.

This transmission method accelerates the download of the data, for instance in areas with limited mobile network availability.

1. Download the upgrade in the BMW app to the smartphone.
2. Follow the instructions in the BMW app.
3. Establish connection to the vehicle.
  - ▷ iOS: Connect Bluetooth audio and Wi-Fi.
  - ▷ Android: Connect Bluetooth audio and Wi-Fi.

The data transfer of the upgrade from the mobile device to the vehicle occurs in the background only while driving.

4. Follow the instructions on the control display.

Additional information:

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

## Information about the version

### General information

The information about the version contains a description of the updates included in the Re-

mote Software Upgrade. During the download and after the installation has been successfully completed, the information about the version can be displayed on the control display.

This information is also available in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

### Displaying information

Display in the vehicle:

1.  Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. ▷ Display currently installed version:
  - "Installed version:"
  - ▷ Display new available version: "Information on version"
6. Follow the instructions on the control display.

Display in the ConnectedDrive customer portal: [www.bmw-connecteddrive.com](http://www.bmw-connecteddrive.com).

## Installing the upgrade

### General information

- ▷ Installation of the Remote Software Upgrade may result in the deletion of software changes, e.g., performance increases not made by the manufacturer of the vehicle.
- ▷ Modifications to the electrical system of the vehicle, for instance to control units, that have not been made by the vehicle manufacturer can lead to an interruption of the installation.
- ▷ The installation does not occur until the consent was given.
- ▷ The installation may take around 20 minutes.
- ▷ The installation cannot be terminated.



- ▶ The vehicle cannot be used during the installation.
- ▶ The vehicle can be exited during the installation.

### Prerequisites for the installation

- ▶ The state of charge of the vehicle battery is sufficient.
- ▶ The outside temperature is above 14 °F/-10 °C.
- ▶ The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- ▶ The hazard warning system is turned off.
- ▶ The selector lever position P is engaged.
- ▶ The engine is turned off and sufficiently cooled down.

If applicable, follow the notes for further prerequisites on the control display.

If the prerequisites are not met, such as a sufficient vehicle battery charge state, the upgrade will not be offered for installation.

Pay attention to an offer for installation, e.g., after longer trips.

### Preparing the vehicle

- ▶ Park the vehicle safely away from the public road.
- ▶ Cellular network reception must be ensured so that a fault message can be sent to the vehicle manufacturer, for instance if the installation is terminated.
- ▶ Close the windows.
- ▶ Close the glass sunroof.
- ▶ Close the trunk.
- ▶ Remove energy consuming devices, such as a mobile phone.
- ▶ The vehicle key must be located in the vehicle for the consent for installation.
- ▶ Switch off the exterior lighting.
- ▶ Remove the devices connected to the diagnostic socket.

### Installing immediately

The upgrade can be installed immediately when all prerequisites have been met.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Start upgrade now"
6. Follow the instructions on the control display.

### Installing with timer

When the trip is completed, a timer can be used to install the upgrade automatically at a configured time, such as during the night. A later installation may make sense to meet functional requirements, e.g., a sufficiently cooled down engine.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. Select the desired settings.

The installation starts automatically when:

- ▶ All prerequisites for the installation have been established correctly.
- ▶ All prerequisites continue to be met at the time of installation.

The timer is turned off when the drive-ready state is turned on.

### Functional limitations

During the upgrade, the majority of functions is temporarily unavailable, for instance:

- ▶ Hazard warning system.
- ▶ Central locking system and, if necessary, Comfort Access.
- ▶ Parking lights.
- ▶ Horn.

- ▷ Alarm system.
  - ▷ Emergency call.
  - ▷ Power windows.
  - ▷ Glass sunroof.
  - ▷ Checking the fuel filler flap lock.
  - ▷ Operate the tailgate or trunk lid.
- The driver's door can be locked and unlocked from the outside using the integrated key.

## After successful upgrade

The vehicle can be used again immediately.

Booked services such as. Advanced Real Time Traffic Information or Remote Services are automatically reactivated during the next trip.

After an extended stationary period, charge the vehicle battery with an extended drive.

## Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, follow the instructions on the control display or in the BMW app.

If the malfunction cannot be corrected, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Validity of the Owner's Manual

### Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource.

### After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update, such as via Remote Software Upgrade, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.



# Personal settings

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## Data protection

### Data transfer

#### Principle

The vehicle offers different services, whose use requires a data transfer to BMW or a service provider.

#### General information

The data transfer can be deactivated for some services. When the data transfer is deactivated, the respective service cannot be used.

#### Settings

The data transfer can be configured in different stages or individually for separate services.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

## Deleting personal data in the vehicle

#### Principle

Depending on the usage, the vehicle stores personal data, such as stored radio stations.

This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

#### General information

Depending on the equipment, the following data is deleted:

- ▷ BMW IDs or driver profiles.
- ▷ Stored radio stations.
- ▷ Stored shortcuts.
- ▷ Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- ▷ Phone book.
- ▷ Online data, for instance Favorites, cookies.
- ▷ Office data, for instance voice memos.
- ▷ Login accounts.
- ▷ Digital key.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 15 minutes. In addition, the vehicle is removed from the My BMW App and ConnectedDrive customer portal so that remote functions can no longer be used.

#### Functional requirements

- ▷ Data can only be deleted while stationary.
- ▷ The vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

#### Deleting data

The personal data in the vehicle will be deleted when the vehicle is reset to the factory settings.

Additional information:

Resetting vehicle data, refer to page 62.

## Reset vehicle data

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when the drive-ready state is

switched off. Data can only be deleted while stationary. The vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Reset vehicle data"
5. "Reset vehicle data"

If setting synchronization has been activated for a BMW ID in the vehicle, personal settings are kept in the BMW Cloud.

## BMW ID/driver profiles

### Principle

In ConnectedDrive countries, the BMW ID is the personal login for all relevant offers for the BMW brand. The BMW ID can be used in the vehicle to store and activate personal vehicle settings.

In non-ConnectedDrive countries, the personal vehicle settings can be stored in driver profiles.

### General information

The BMW ID must be registered once. A BMW ID can be registered via the BMW app, in the ConnectedDrive Portal, or with an authorized service center.

A driver profile is created in the vehicle.

If a vehicle is used by several people, each person can create their own BMW ID or driver profile in order to save their personal settings.

If a BMW ID or driver profile is activated, the settings stored for it are applied in the vehicle.

Many of the settings that are stored for a BMW ID in the vehicle can be synchronized with the BMW Cloud. This makes these settings available in any vehicle where the same BMW ID is used to log in.

The vehicle can store three BMW IDs or three driver profiles.

A BMW ID or driver profile can be activated while unlocking. For this purpose, the driver recognition must be assigned to the BMW ID or the driver profile via a vehicle key or a digital key.

If no BMW ID or driver profile is activated when the vehicle is unlocked, the vehicle loads the guest profile.

### Functional requirements

When a BMW ID or driver profile is created, changed, deleted, or edited, the vehicle must move no faster than at walking speed.

Logging in the vehicle with a BMW ID and synchronization with the BMW Cloud are only possible when the vehicle has cellular network reception.

### Welcome window

After unlocking the vehicle, a Welcome window is shown on the control display. The type of the welcome depends on the following prerequisites:

- ▶ The vehicle does not have a stored BMW ID or driver profile:  
The welcome is neutral. An option to add a BMW ID or create a driver profile is offered.
- ▶ The vehicle key or the digital key has not been assigned to a BMW ID or a driver profile:  
The welcome is neutral. The stored BMW IDs or the stored driver profiles are offered for selection. Additionally, it is possible to add a new BMW ID or create a new driver profile.
- ▶ A BMW ID or driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key or digital key:  
The welcome is personalized, the stored settings are activated. The BMW ID or the driver profile can be changed.

As soon as the drive-ready state is turned on or the control display is tapped outside of the Welcome window, the welcome will be hidden.



## Registering your BMW ID

To use a BMW ID, proceed as follows:

- ▷ Register your BMW ID.
- ▷ Activate the BMW ID.
- ▷ Add or confirm the BMW ID in the vehicle.

Registration of your BMW ID in the vehicle can be started via the BMW app.

1.  Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. "Add BMW ID"
3. "Register now"
4. Scan the QR code shown in the display.  
The BMW ID is created on the smartphone.

Alternatively, the BMW ID can be registered by the authorized service center and added to the vehicle. The BMW ID must then be confirmed on the control display in the corresponding vehicle.

## Adding the BMW ID

An existing BMW ID can be added to the vehicle:

1.  Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. "Add BMW ID"
3. ▷ "Log in with My BMW App"  
▷ "Log in with BMW ID"
4. ▷ Scan the QR code shown on the display.  
The BMW ID is copied from the BMW app.  
▷ Enter the access data for the BMW ID.
5. Depending on the national-market version, the following settings can be selected:
  - ▷ "Synchronize BMW ID"  
The settings stored in the BMW Cloud are applied.
  - ▷ "Transfer settings"

If the vehicle is in the guest profile, the settings of the guest profile will be applied.

- ▷ "Continue"

The vehicle is added to the user's BMW app.

## Confirming a BMW ID

If the BMW ID has been created by an authorized service center and added to the vehicle, the BMW ID must then be confirmed in the vehicle:

1. Select the BMW ID.
2. Select the desired confirmation:
  - ▷ Scan the displayed QR code with the BMW app.
  - ▷ Enter the password for the BMW ID.

## BMW app

If a BMW ID has been added to a vehicle, the vehicle is automatically added to the BMW app. This means that BMW app functions can be used for this vehicle. To do so, the BMW app must be used with the same BMW ID.

Alternatively, a vehicle can be added to the BMW app by the authorized service center. In this case, the BMW ID must then be confirmed on the control display in the corresponding vehicle.

In rare cases, the use of BMW app functions for this vehicle may be restricted. More information is shown on the control display.

## Creating a driver profile

1.  Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. "Add driver profile"
3. Enter the name for the driver profile.
4. Select the desired setting:  
"Transfer settings"

If the vehicle is in the guest profile, the settings of the guest profile will be applied.



## Primary user

The primary user is the person who first enters their BMW ID into the vehicle and the vehicle into the BMW app. Alternatively, the primary user can be defined by an authorized service center.

The primary user has access to the following settings, for example:

- ▷ Removing BMW IDs stored in the vehicle.
- ▷ Transferring the primary user role to another BMW ID.
- ▷ Change vehicle-wide data protection settings.
- ▷ Create the main digital key.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 79.

## Specifying driver detection

Driver detection and a PIN can be set up for a BMW ID or a driver profile.

The driver detection offers the following advantages:

- ▷ The BMW ID or the driver profile with saved settings is activated automatically.
- ▷ The settings are not accessible to other persons.

The driver detection is specified immediately following the addition of the BMW ID or after creating the driver profile.

Prior to the selection of the driver detection, a PIN must be created.

### ▷ "Set PIN"

The PIN can be used to activate the BMW ID or the driver profile, even if the assigned vehicle key or the assigned digital key is not available.

### ▷ "Vehicle key"

The vehicle key that is recognized in the vehicle interior is assigned to the BMW ID or the driver profile.

### ▷ "Digital Key"

The digital key that is recognized in the vehicle interior is assigned to the BMW ID or the driver profile.

## Automatic driver recognition

If driver recognition has been established, automatic activation of the BMW ID or driver profile is triggered by the following actions:

- ▷ By unlocking the vehicle using the button on the assigned vehicle key.
- ▷ By unlocking the vehicle using an external door handle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned Digital Key must be carried with you.
- ▷ By automatic unlocking when approaching the vehicle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned Digital Key must be carried with you. Depending on the country, it may not be possible to recognize the Digital Key.

If there are several vehicle keys or Digital Keys in the vicinity of the vehicle, activation of the BMW ID or driver profile is done according to the following priority:

- ▷ The key that unlocks the vehicle triggers the activation of the assigned BMW ID or the assigned driver profile.

The guest profile is activated when the vehicle is unlocked using a key that is not assigned to a BMW ID or driver profile.

- ▷ If a vehicle key and a Digital Key are detected at the same time, the Digital Key triggers the activation of the assigned BMW ID or the assigned driver profile.
- ▷ If another key is detected on the driver's door after activating the BMW ID or the driver profile, the BMW ID or the driver profile of the last key detected is activated.

If no BMW ID and no driver profile are assigned to this key, the guest profile is activated.



## Setting synchronization

If synchronization is switched on, settings from the following areas, for example, are continuously synchronized:

- ▷ BMW ID, e.g., profile picture.
- ▷ Navigation, e.g., recent destinations, home address, or map settings.
- ▷ Media, e.g., favorites or saved radio stations.
- ▷ iDrive, e.g., main menu configuration, language, or units.
- ▷ Personal Assistant, e.g., suggestions or activation word.
- ▷ Exterior lighting, e.g., flashing indicator and home lights.

Settings from the following areas are only synchronized when you log in for the first time:

- ▷ Seating and climate comfort, e.g., driver's seat position or temperature setting.
- ▷ Data protection menu.

## Selecting the BMW ID/driver profile

If the BMW ID or driver profile could not be recognized when unlocking the vehicle, select the BMW ID or driver profile on the welcome window.

The BMW ID or driver profile can be changed at any time via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. ▷ "Change BMW ID"
  - ▷ "Change driver profile"
3. Select the BMW ID or driver profile.
4. If necessary, enter the PIN.

The BMW ID or the driver profile are activated, the stored settings are loaded.

## Guest profile

The guest profile can be activated and changed by anyone.

In the following cases the guest profile is automatically active:

- ▷ A BMW ID has not yet been added or a driver profile has not yet been created.
- ▷ No BMW ID or driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key or the digital key that was used to unlock the vehicle.

The following limitations apply to the guest profile:

- ▷ Selected functions that edit personal data are not available in the guest profile. This includes functions of the navigation and the saving of favorites. More information on data processing is available in the ConnectedDrive data protection notes / service descriptions.
- ▷ The guest profile cannot be renamed.
- ▷ It is not possible to assign a PIN to the guest profile.
- ▷ It is not possible to assign driver detection to the guest profile.
- ▷ In ConnectedDrive countries, the synchronization with the BMW Cloud is not possible.

The guest profile is selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. ▷ "Change BMW ID"
  - ▷ "Change driver profile"
3. "Continue as guest"

## Deleting the BMW ID/driver profile

1.  Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. ▷ "Change BMW ID"
  - ▷ "Change driver profile"
3.  Tap the icon of the desired BMW ID or the desired driver profile.

Removing a BMW ID from the vehicle causes the vehicle to be removed from the BMW app. If the BMW ID has been synchronized with the

BMW Cloud, the data stored in the BMW Cloud is retained after the BMW ID is deleted. If the currently active BMW ID is removed, the guest profile is activated.

Removing a vehicle from the BMW app removes the corresponding BMW ID from the vehicle. If the BMW ID was synchronized with the BMW Cloud, the BMW ID data stored in the BMW Cloud will be retained.

If the vehicle is removed from the primary user's BMW app, it will also be removed from the other users' BMW apps. The corresponding BMW IDs are removed from the vehicle.

If the vehicle is reset to factory settings, the vehicle is removed from all users' BMW apps and all BMW IDs are removed from the vehicle.

## Transfer of the vehicle key

A vehicle key that is assigned to a BMW ID or a driver profile can be used to view or change the stored personal settings.

Before a vehicle key is transferred to other persons, any assigned driver detection should be canceled. Changes to the driver detection can be made in the settings of the BMW ID or the driver profile.

The BMW Digital Key provides the option to transfer a digital key to permit other persons the use of your own vehicle.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page [79](#).

## Settings

### General information

Settings added when adding a BMW ID or creating a driver profile can be changed.

1.  Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. "Settings"

The following settings are available for the BMW ID:

- ▷ The type of driver detection.
- ▷ The profile picture.
- ▷ The synchronization with the BMW Cloud.
- ▷ The personal salutation.

The following settings are available for the driver profile:

- ▷ The type of driver detection.
- ▷ The profile picture.
- ▷ The profile name.

### Selecting a profile picture

The profile picture can be selected from the predefined profile pictures:

1.  Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. "Settings"
3. "Manage profile picture"
4. "Select profile picture"

For a BMW ID, the personal profile picture can be taken from the profile in the BMW app. This requires that the synchronization with the BMW Cloud is activated in the settings. After the profile picture from the BMW app has been applied, you can only select from the predefined pictures if the profile picture in the BMW app is deleted or synchronization is deactivated.

### System limits

A clear driver detection via the vehicle key or the digital key may not always be possible in the following cases, for example:

- ▷ The driver changes, but the vehicle is not locked and unlocked.
- ▷ When multiple vehicle keys or multiple digital keys with an assigned BMW ID or driver profile are located in the outer area on the driver's side of the vehicle.
- ▷ When the vehicle was unlocked from the BMW app.



The use of personal settings that are stored for a BMW ID in other vehicles is subject to technical limitations. For example, settings may be stored for a system that is not available, or available in a non-compatible version, in other vehicles.

# Opening and closing

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## Vehicle key

### General information

Two vehicle keys are included in the scope of delivery, each containing an integrated key.

Each vehicle key contains a replaceable battery.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, various settings are possible for the button functions.

A BMW ID or a driver profile with personal settings can be assigned to a vehicle key.

To provide information on maintenance recommendations, the service data is stored in the vehicle key.

To prevent possible locking in of the vehicle key, take the vehicle key with you when exiting the vehicle.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

The vehicle key has a button cell battery. Batteries or button cell batteries can be swallowed and lead to serious or fatal injuries within two hours, for example due to internal burns or chemical burns. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Keep the vehicle key and batteries out of reach of children. Imme-

diately seek medical help if there is any suspicion that a battery or button cell battery has been swallowed or is located in any part of the body.

### Overview



Buttons on the vehicle key.

| Icon                                                                                | Meaning                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
|    | Unlock.                                                 |
|    | Lock.<br>Stationary climate control, refer to page 231. |
|  | Unlock the trunk.                                       |
|  | Panic mode.<br>Pathway lighting, refer to page 154.     |

### Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be disabled and replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

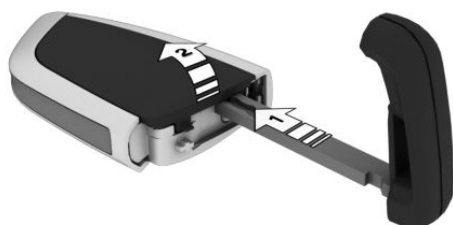
If the lost vehicle key has an assigned BMW ID or driver profile, the connection to this vehicle key must be deleted. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the BMW ID or driver profile.

## Replacing the battery

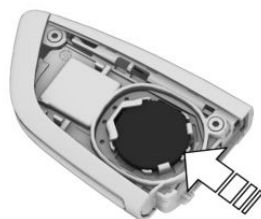
### **NOTICE**

Improper batteries in a battery-operated device can damage the device. There is a risk of damage to property. Always replace the discharged battery with a battery with the same voltage, the same size and the same specification.

1. Remove the integrated key from the vehicle key.
2. Place the integrated key underneath the battery compartment cover, arrow 1, and lift the lid with a lever movement of the integrated key, arrow 2.



3. Push battery in arrow direction using a pointed object and lift it out.



4. Insert a CR2032 3V battery with the positive side facing up.
5. Press the lid closed.
6. Push the integrated key into the vehicle key until the integrated key engages.



Have old batteries disposed of by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, or take them to a collection point.

## Integrated key

### General information

The vehicle can be unlocked without the vehicle key using the integrated key.

Depending on the national-market version, the integrated key will fit in the glove compartment.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

For some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with particular knowledge.

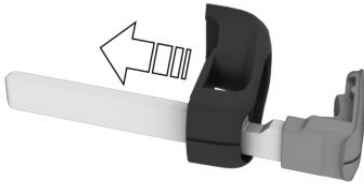
If persons spend a lengthy time in the vehicle and are thereby exposed to extreme temperatures, there is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

### Removing the integrated key

1. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

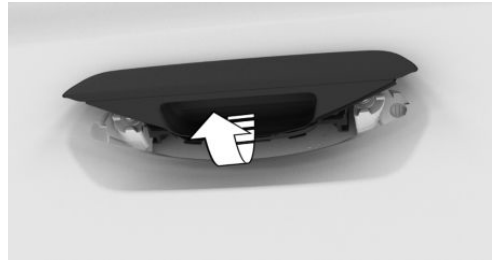


2. Pull off frame from integrated key.



### Unlocking via the door lock

1. Pull and hold the door handle outward with one hand.



2. Unlock the door lock with the integrated key by turning it counterclockwise.



The other doors must be unlocked from the inside.

### Locking the vehicle from the interior

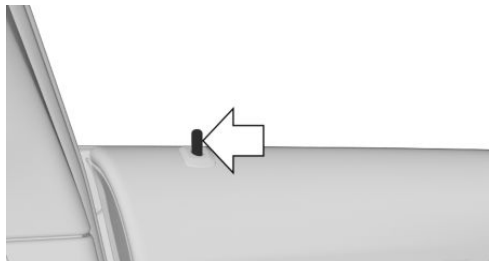
#### General information

The vehicle can be locked manually from the inside.

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the vehicle.



## Overview



Door pin for manual locking of the driver's door.

## Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the door pin in the driver's door downwards from the inside.
3. Lock rear doors from the inside.
4. Open the front passenger door and lock it manually.
5. Close the front passenger door from the outside.

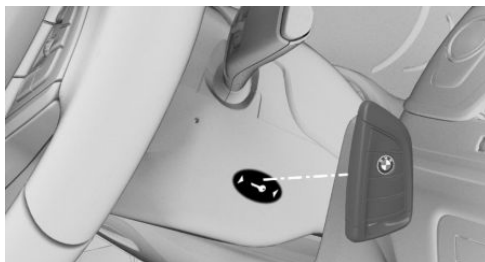
## Alarm system

If the vehicle is unlocked with the integrated key via the door lock, the activated alarm system will be triggered when the door is opened.

In this case, use the vehicle key emergency detection to switch off the alarm.

If the doors are manually locked from the inside, the alarm system is not activated.

## Emergency detection of the vehicle key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the vehicle key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the rear of the vehicle key against the mark on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2.
  - ▶ If the vehicle key is detected:  
Turn on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.
  - ▶ If the vehicle key is not detected:  
Slightly change the position of the vehicle key and repeat the procedure.

## Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

Vehicle key detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▶ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.
- ▶ Fault of the radio link from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- ▶ Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.  
Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.
- ▶ Fault of the radio link from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.



Do not carry the vehicle key in close proximity to other electronic devices.

- ▷ Fault of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.
- ▷ The vehicle key is located in direct proximity of the wireless charging tray.

Place the vehicle key in a different location.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key. Use the Emergency detection of the vehicle key to turn on drive-ready state.

## Access to vehicle interior

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

#### **Warning**

For some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with particular knowledge.

If persons spend a lengthy time in the vehicle and are thereby exposed to extreme temperatures, there is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

#### **Warning**

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

### Actions during unlocking

Depending on the settings, the following functions are performed when unlocking the vehicle:

- ▷ Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap will be unlocked or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked.
- ▷ The unlocking of the vehicle can be confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- ▷ The welcome light can be turned on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- ▷ If a BMW ID or a driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this BMW ID or driver profile will be activated.
- ▷ The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- ▷ Depending on vehicle equipment, folded-in exterior mirrors are folded out.

If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the vehicle interior, they will not be folded out during unlocking.



- ▶ Anti-theft protection is switched off.
- ▶ The alarm system is switched off.

Additional information:

- ▶ Settings, refer to page 83.
- ▶ Welcome lights, refer to page 154.
- ▶ BMW ID/driver profiles, refer to page 63.

## Actions during locking

Depending on the settings, the following functions are performed when locking the vehicle:

- ▶ The locking of the vehicle can be confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- ▶ Depending on vehicle equipment, the exterior mirrors can be folded in automatically when locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- ▶ Pathway lighting can be activated during locking.

The following functions are executed:

- ▶ All doors, the tailgate, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- ▶ Anti-theft protection is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock button or door opener.
- ▶ The alarm system is switched on.

If the drive-ready state is still turned on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn will honk twice. In this case, the drive-ready state must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 83.

## With the vehicle key

### Unlocking the vehicle



Press the button on the vehicle key.

If only the driver's door and fuel filler flap have been unlocked due to the settings in place, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

After opening one of the front doors, the vehicle is ready for operation.

The lighting functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

### Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.



2. Press the button on the vehicle key.  
All vehicle access points are locked.

## On the external door handle

### Principle

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

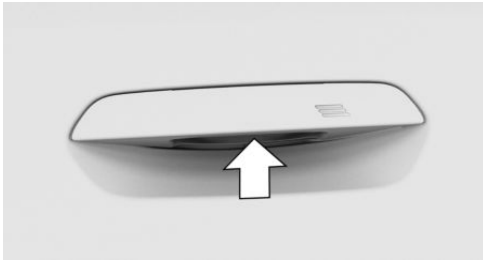
### General information

The function is available with Comfort Access.

### Functional requirements

- ▶ Carry the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- ▶ To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- ▶ After locking, approx. 2 seconds must elapse before unlocking is possible.

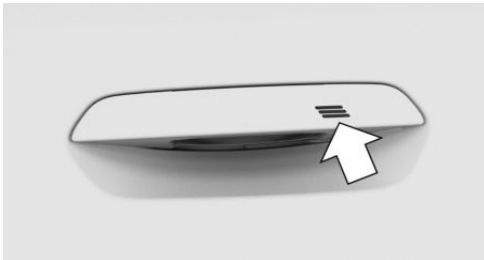
## Unlock vehicle



Reach into the recessed grip of a front door.

## Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Touch the grooved surface on the external door handle of a closed door with your finger for approx. 1 second without reaching into the recessed grip.



## Malfunction

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the locking request detection on the external door handles.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the vehicle key or use the integrated key.

## Touchless unlocking/locking of the vehicle

### Principle

When the driver approaches the locked vehicle with the vehicle key, the vehicle is unlocked.

When the driver walks away from the unlocked vehicle with the vehicle key, the vehicle will be locked.

### General information

The function is available with Comfort Access.

The vehicle will be unlocked when an authorized vehicle key is detected in the unlocking zone.

The unlocking zone is located within a radius of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m around the side and rear of the vehicle.

The vehicle will be locked when the vehicle key leaves the locking zone.

The locking zone is located within a radius of approx. 9 ft/3 m around the side and rear of the vehicle.

If the vehicle key is located in the unlocking zone for an extended period of time without movement, the vehicle will be locked automatically.

If a passenger is detected in the front passenger seat during locking and the seat belt of the front passenger is engaged in the seat belt buckle during locking:

- ▷ The vehicle will be locked but not secured against theft.
- ▷ The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

### Actions during unlocking

If the settings specify that only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap will be unlocked, note the following:

The driver's door and fuel filler flap will only be unlocked when the driver approaches the vehicle on the driver's side.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 83.

## Functional requirements

- ▶ Carry the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- ▶ Unlocking: when entering the unlocking zone, the doors and cargo area must be closed.
- ▶ Locking: when leaving the locking zone, the doors and cargo area must be closed.
- ▶ Automatic unlocking and locking must be activated in the settings.
- ▶ The drive-ready state must be turned off.
- ▶ For contactless locking of the vehicle, no second vehicle key may be within a radius of 18 ft/6 m around the vehicle.
- ▶ If the vehicle has been in the idle state for several days, contactless unlocking/locking will only be available after the vehicle has been driven.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page [83](#).

## With the Key Card

### Principle

The Key Card is a chip card on which the digital key is installed. The Key Card can be used to unlock and lock the vehicle.

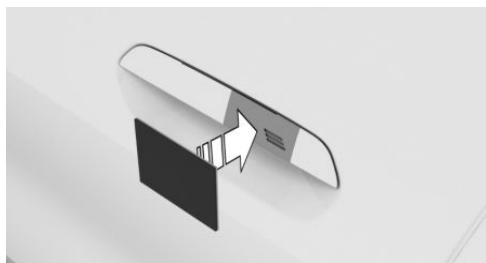
Additional information:

Key Card, refer to page [78](#).

### General information

The Key Card is available with Comfort Access.

## Locking/unlocking the vehicle



Hold activated Key Card directly on the center of the external door handle of the driver's door.

When locking the vehicle with the Key Card, make sure that all doors and the trunk are closed.

If the Key Card is not detected, slightly change the position of the Key Card and repeat the procedure.

## With the BMW Digital Key

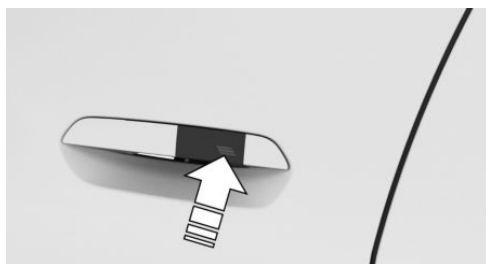
### Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, a digital key can be installed on a compatible smartphone and used to unlock and lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page [79](#).

## Locking/unlocking the vehicle



Hold the near field communication antenna of the smartphone directly and centered on the external door handle of the driver's door. The

position of the near field communication antenna depends on the smartphone model.

When locking the vehicle with the smartphone, make sure that all doors and the trunk are closed.

## Frequently Asked Questions

What precautions can be taken to be able to open a vehicle, despite accidentally locking in the vehicle key?

- ▶ The app's remote services offer the option to lock and unlock a vehicle.  
This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract, and the app must be installed on a smartphone.
- ▶ Unlocking the vehicle can be requested via the BMW ConnectedDrive Call Center.  
An active BMW ConnectedDrive contract is required.

## Access to the cargo area

### General information

It may not be possible to open the cargo area when the vehicle is in valet parking mode.

Additional information:

Valet parking mode, refer to page [83](#).

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Body parts can be jammed when operating the trunk lid. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the travel path of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

#### **NOTICE**

During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

## With the vehicle key

### General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area. Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the following settings can be changed:

- ▶ Unlocking the cargo area with the vehicle key also unlocks the doors.
- ▶ Before unlocking the cargo area with the vehicle key, first unlock the vehicle.

### Functional requirements

Selector lever position P must be engaged to open the cargo area with the vehicle key.

You must enable the setting for opening with the vehicle key.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page [83](#).

### Unlocking the trunk



Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

## On the trunk

### General information

With Comfort Access, the cargo area can be accessed without activating the vehicle key.

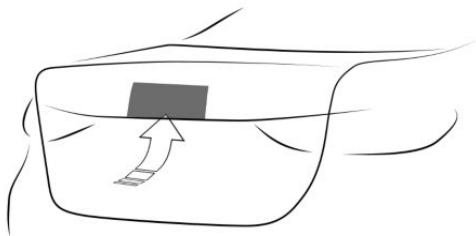
The key is automatically detected near the vehicle.



### Functional prerequisite

Carry the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.

### Opening the trunk



- ▶ Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the trunk.
- ▶ With Comfort Access: carry the vehicle key with you and press the button on the trunk. Locked doors are not unlocked.

### Closing the cargo area

Pull down the cargo area using the recessed grips.

### In the interior

### Functional prerequisite

The vehicle key or digital key must be located inside the vehicle in order to close the cargo area using the button in the vehicle interior.

### Unlocking the trunk



Press the button in the driver's door.

### Trunk emergency unlocking



Pull the handle inside the cargo area.  
The trunk is unlocked.

## Key Card

### Principle

The Key Card allows the vehicle to be unlocked and locked, as well as started.

### General information

Key Card availability depends on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

A digital key that has already been paired with the vehicle is installed on the Key Card. The digital key must be activated via iDrive.

Before leaving the vehicle, deactivate the Key Card or take the Key Card with you because the active Key Card can be used to start the vehicle. Always take the vehicle key with you to a service appointment.

### Safety information

#### NOTICE

If the Key Card and a mobile device are in the wireless charging tray at the same time, the Key Card could become damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not place the Key Card in the wireless charging tray at the same time as a mobile device.

## Activating/deactivating Key Card in the vehicle

### General information

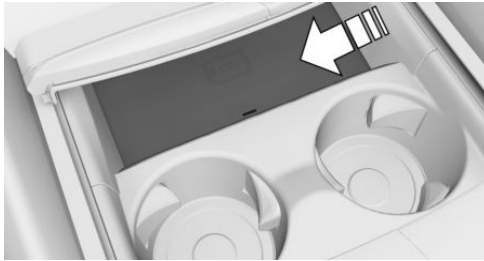
When the BMW Digital Key is activated for the vehicle, a digital key can be used instead of the vehicle key.

A deactivated Key Card remains in the list of paired digital keys.

### Functional requirement

A vehicle key must be located in the vehicle to activate and deactivate the Key Card.

### Activating Key Card



1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place Key Card in the center of the smartphone tray.
3. Follow instructions on the control display.

### Deactivating Key Card

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Digital Key"
5. "Key Card"
6. "Deactivate Key Card"

A deactivated Key Card remains in the list of paired digital keys.

## Unlocking and locking the vehicle

The vehicle can be unlocked and locked with the activated Key Card.

Additional information:

Access to the vehicle interior, refer to page 73.

## Turning on the drive-ready state



1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place activated Key Card in the center of the smartphone tray.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

After drive-ready state is switched on, the Key Card can be removed from the tray.

## Malfunction

The detection of the Key Card by the vehicle may be disrupted by objects between the sensors and the Key Card, such as a wallet or a smartphone cover.

## BMW Digital Key

### Principle

BMW Digital Key allows the vehicle to be unlocked and locked, as well as started, with a compatible smartphone.

### General information

BMW Digital Key availability and functionality depend on vehicle equipment and national-market version.



BMW Digital Key can be used with a compatible smartphone or other compatible mobile devices.

To unlock and start a vehicle with a compatible smartphone, this function must be offered by the smartphone manufacturer. The My BMW app can be used to check if the smartphone and vehicle are compatible and which functions are supported.

A BMW ID or a driver profile with individual settings can be assigned to a digital key.

When using a smartphone as a Digital Key, always carry a vehicle key or the activated Key Card with you. This ensures access to the vehicle, even in the event of a smartphone failure. It is also helpful to have the vehicle key or Key Card with you if the vehicle needs to be handed over to another person. You can then hand over the vehicle key or the Key Card instead of your smartphone.

Always take the vehicle key with you to a service appointment.

Additional information:

- ▶ BMW ID/driver profiles, refer to page 63.
- ▶ Key Card, refer to page 78.
- ▶ [www.bmw.com/digitalkey](http://www.bmw.com/digitalkey)

## Functional requirements

- ▶ The smartphone is compatible with BMW Digital Key
- ▶ The vehicle is linked with the Connected-Drive account of the vehicle owner.
- ▶ The rechargeable battery of the smartphone has a sufficient charge. The necessary minimum charge of the rechargeable battery depends on the smartphone.

## Enabling the main digital key

Vehicle owner's smartphone is enabled as a main digital key in the vehicle. The vehicle owner must prove his authorization for the vehicle for this purpose.

You can begin the authorization process using the My BMW app or using your activation code in the corresponding smartphone function, e.g., the Wallet app. Both vehicle keys must be in the vehicle during activation.

Follow the activation instructions in the Digital Key menu in the app or on the control display.

## Sharing digital keys

### General information

Digital key allows the sharing of digital keys with other people. This option is available via the smartphone that is enabled as main digital key. This function must be supported by the smartphone.

### Forwarding authorization

To share the digital key, select the corresponding function on the smartphone, for instance in the Wallet app.

As soon as a digital key is shared with another person, the person will receive an invitation. When the invitation is accepted, the digital key on the recipient's smartphone will be activated.

### Authentication

Depending on the recipient's smartphone model, an authentication may be required for security and safety reasons.

An authorized vehicle key, the main digital key or another method may be used for authentication. Follow the corresponding instructions on the smartphone or the control display.

## Deleting digital keys

### General information

Deleted digital keys will be removed from the list of enabled digital keys.

Deleted digital keys cannot be restored.



## Deleting the main digital key

The main digital key can be deleted from the smartphone or via iDrive.

The deletion of the main digital key is completed immediately.

## Deleting a shared key

Shared keys can be deleted using the smartphone with the master Digital Key, using the smartphone with the shared key to be deleted, or via iDrive.

The deletion via the smartphone using the main digital key will not be performed until the vehicle is used with a key other than the key to be deleted.

If the smartphone associated with a shared key or iDrive is used to delete a shared key, it will be deleted immediately.

## Deletion via iDrive

To delete a digital key via iDrive, there must be an authorized vehicle key in the vehicle, or the master Digital Key must be in the smartphone tray.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Digital Key"
5. If necessary, select the digital key.
6. Delete the Digital Key.

## Resetting the function

To reset the BMW Digital Key function, an authorized vehicle key must be located in the vehicle.

When resetting the BMW Digital Key function, all digital keys including the main digital key will be deleted. The Key Card digital key is not deleted.

After the reset, the vehicle can no longer be unlocked, locked or started with a digital key.

The main digital key must be enabled again to be able to use BMW Digital Key again.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Digital Key"
5. "Reset function"

## Unlocking and locking the vehicle

The vehicle can be unlocked and locked using the external door handle.

Additional information:

Access to the vehicle interior, refer to page 73.

## Turning on the drive-ready state

### Using the smartphone tray



1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place smartphone in the center of the smartphone tray.  
Ensure that the display is facing up.
3. Close the cover of the smartphone tray.
4. Press the Start/Stop button to turn on the drive-ready state.

## Sale of the smartphone

Delete all digital keys on the smartphone prior to selling the smartphone. This ensures that the smartphone can no longer be used for the vehicle.



## Changing smartphones

To use a new smartphone as a master Digital Key, activate the new smartphone according to the instructions for the master Digital Key. The previous master key is deleted when the new smartphone is activated.

## Sale of the vehicle

Prior to selling a vehicle, reset the Digital Key function or remove the vehicle from the ConnectedDrive account of the current vehicle owner.

When the vehicle is removed from the ConnectedDrive account, all digital keys for the vehicle will be deleted. The Key Card digital key is not deleted.

## System limits

The interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor of the alarm system cannot be switched off with a digital key.

Additional information:

Alarm system, refer to page [85](#).

## Malfunction

Digital key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▶ The smartphone is shielded from the sensors in the vehicle by a smartphone cover that is not suitable.
- ▶ Objects such as a chip card or the Key Card are located between the smartphone and the smartphone cover.
- ▶ Fault of the connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- ▶ Shielding of the smartphone due to buildings or metal objects.

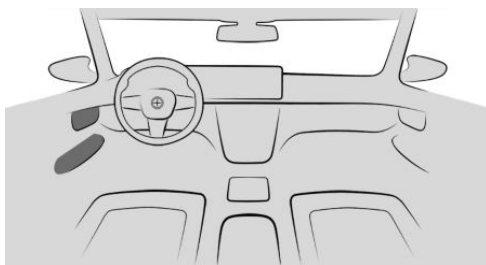
## Buttons for the central locking system

### General information

The vehicle is automatically locked when driving off.

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights are illuminated.

### Overview



The central locking buttons are located on the front door.

### Locking the vehicle



Press the button with the front doors closed.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

### Unlocking the vehicle



Press the button.

### Opening the door



Press the button to unlock all the doors.

Pull the door opener above the armrest.

- ▶ Front doors: pull the door handle on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.
- ▶ Back doors: pull twice on the door handle on the door to be opened; the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

## Valet parking mode

### Principle

In the valet parking mode, the control display is disabled.

E.g., this mode can be used when the vehicle is handed over for valet parking.

### General information

Depending on the national-market version, the valet parking mode may not be available.

Valet Parking mode has the following restrictions:

- ▶ Vehicle settings cannot be changed via iDrive.
- ▶ Settings stored to a BMW ID or guest profile cannot be changed.
- ▶ Personal data cannot be displayed.
- ▶ The volume of the audio system is limited.
- ▶ The integrated Universal Remote Control is deactivated.
- ▶ Dynamic Stability Control cannot be turned off.
- ▶ The availability of certain settings of the driving modes is limited.
- ▶ The M1 and M2 buttons on the steering wheel are not active.

Additional information:

BMW ID/driver profiles, refer to page [63](#).

## Functional requirement

The driver has registered in the vehicle with a BMW ID.

### Activating the valet parking mode

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Valet parking mode"

The cargo area is locked and disconnected from the central locking system.

5. If necessary, "PIN"

If the active BMW ID does not have an assigned PIN, this PIN must be set now. The PIN is needed to deactivate the valet parking mode.

6. If necessary, enter the PIN.
7. "Activate valet parking mode"

### Deactivating valet parking mode

1. Select the desired BMW ID on the lock screen.
2. ▶ Enter the assigned PIN for the BMW ID.  
If you have forgotten the PIN: enter the access data for the BMW ID.  
▶ If the selected BMW ID does not have an assigned PIN: enter the access data for the BMW ID.

## Settings

### General information

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.



## Unlocking and locking

### Doors

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Unlock"
6. Select the desired setting:
  - ▷ "Driver's door only"  
Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
  - ▷ "All doors"  
The entire vehicle is unlocked.

### Touchless unlocking/locking

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Comfort access"
5. Select the desired setting.

### Automatic unlocking

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. Select the desired setting:
  - ▷ "Unlock doors at end of trip"
  - ▷ "Unlock doors when in P"

After drive-ready state is switched off, the locked vehicle is unlocked automatically by pressing the start/stop button or engaging selector lever position P.

### Automatic locking

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"

3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Lock after a short time"

The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if no door is opened after unlocking.

### Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. Select the desired setting:
  - ▷ "Flash on lock/unlock"  
Unlocking is signaled by flashing twice, locking by flashing once.
  - ▷ With alarm system:  
"Sound on lock/unlock"  
Unlocking is confirmed with two sound signals, locking is confirmed with one sound signal.

### Folding mirrors in automatically

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Fold mirrors on lock/unlock"

### Cargo area

#### Cargo area and doors

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Tailgate"
5. Select the desired setting:
  - ▷ "Tailgate"

Depending on the equipment, the cargo area will be unlocked or opened.

► "Tailgate and door(s)"

Depending on the equipment, the trunk will be unlocked or opened and the doors are unlocked.

► "Tailgate will only open if vehicle is already unlocked"

The vehicle must be unlocked before the cargo area can be operated with the vehicle key.

► "Lock tailgate button"

Operating the cargo area with the vehicle key is disabled.

Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.

► Optical alarm:

By flashing of the hazard warning system and headlights, where required.

Do not modify the system to ensure function of the alarm system.

## Turning the alarm system on/off

The alarm system is activated or deactivated as soon as the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

If the vehicle is locked remotely using the My BMW app, the alarm system is not switched on.

## Alarm system

### Principle

The alarm system issues a visual and acoustic signal when someone attempts to open the locked vehicle incorrectly.

### General information

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- Opening a door, the hood, or the cargo area.
- Movements in the interior.
- Changes in the vehicle inclination, such as during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
- Disconnected battery voltage.
- Improper use of the socket for OBD on-board diagnostics.
- Locking the vehicle while a device is connected to the diagnostic socket.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

- Acoustic alarm:

### Opening the doors with the alarm system switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if the door was unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

### Opening the cargo area with the alarm system switched on

The cargo area can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After closing the cargo area, the cargo area will be locked and monitored again. The hazard warning system flashes once during closing.

### Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.



- Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.



## Indicator light on the interior mirror



- ▶ The indicator light flashes briefly every 2 seconds:  
The alarm system is switched on.
- ▶ The indicator light flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then flashes briefly every 2 seconds:  
Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or tailgate are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.  
When the remaining open access points are closed, the interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be turned on.
- ▶ The indicator light flashes even though all access points have been closed:  
Alarm system error.
- ▶ The indicator light goes out after unlocking:  
The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- ▶ The indicator light flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:  
The alarm has been triggered.

## Tilt alarm sensor

The inclination of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

## Interior motion sensor

The vehicle interior is monitored.

The alarm system responds when movement is detected in the vehicle interior.

The windows and the glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

## Avoiding unintentional alarms

### General information

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- ▶ In car washes.
- ▶ In duplex garages.
- ▶ During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- ▶ With animals in the vehicle.
- ▶ When the vehicle is locked after start of refueling.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

## Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor



Press the button on the vehicle key within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator light illuminates for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

## Ending the alarm

Unlock the vehicle.

If the vehicle is unlocked with the integrated key, the drive-ready state must subsequently be turned on via the emergency detection of the vehicle key.

## Window

### General information

When a window is frequently opened to the same position, this task can be performed by the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant. This is useful if you frequently use the same parking garage, for example.

Additional information:

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, refer to page 51.

### Safety information



#### Warning

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the windows is clear during opening and closing.

### With the vehicle key

#### Opening windows



Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows open for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

#### Closing the windows



With Comfort Access: press and hold the button on the vehicle key after locking.

The windows close for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, exterior mirrors are folded in unless they were folded in while locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.

### On the external door handle

#### Principle

The windows can be closed using the external door handle without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

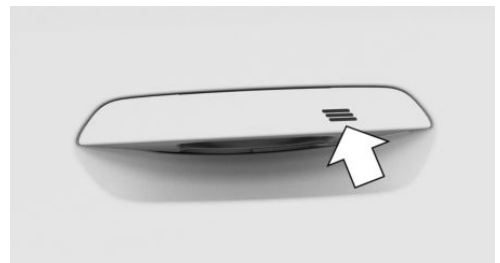
#### General information

The function is available with Comfort Access.

#### Functional prerequisite

Carry the vehicle key with you, for instance in your pants pocket.

#### Closing the windows



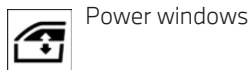
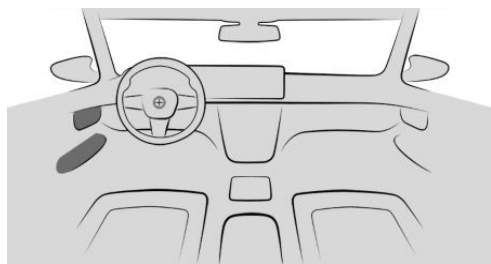
Touch the grooved surface on the external door handle of a closed door with your finger and hold it there without grasping the recessed grip.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, exterior mirrors are folded in unless they were folded in while locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.

## In the interior

### Overview



### Functional requirements

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.

The vehicle key or a digital key must be inside of the vehicle.

### Opening windows

- ▷  Press the switch to the resistance point.  
The window opens while the switch is being held.
- ▷  Press the switch beyond the resistance point.  
The window opens automatically.  
Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

### Closing the windows

- ▷  Pull the switch to the resistance point.  
The window closes while the switch is being held.
- ▷  Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.  
The window closes automatically.  
Pulling again stops the motion.

## Jam protection system

### Principle

The jam protection prevents objects or body parts becoming jammed between the door frame and window while a window is being closed.

### General information

If resistance or blockage is detected while a window is being closed, the closing will be interrupted.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.

### Closing without the jam protection system

In case of danger from the outside or if icing might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the  switch past the resistance point and hold it there.  
The window closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.
2. Pull the  switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.  
The window closes without jam protection.



## Glass sunroof

### Safety information



#### Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the glass sunroof. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.

### With the vehicle key

#### Opening glass sunroof



Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The glass sunroof with sun protection will be opened for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

#### Closing glass sunroof



With Comfort Access: press and hold the button on the vehicle key in close range of the vehicle after locking.

The glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, exterior mirrors are folded in unless they were folded in while locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.

### On the external door handle

#### Principle

The glass sunroof can be closed using the external door handle without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

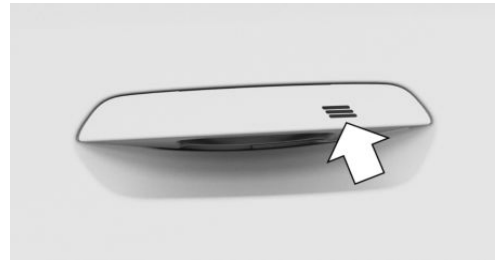
### General information

The function is available with Comfort Access.

### Functional prerequisite

Carry the vehicle key with you, for instance in your pants pocket.

### Closing glass sunroof



Touch the grooved surface on the external door handle of a closed door with your finger and hold it there without grasping the recessed grip.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, exterior mirrors are folded in unless they were folded in while locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.

### In the interior

#### Functional requirements

The glass sunroof and sun protection can be operated under the following conditions.

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ Speed of 155 mph/250 km/h not exceeded.

The vehicle key must be in the car's interior.

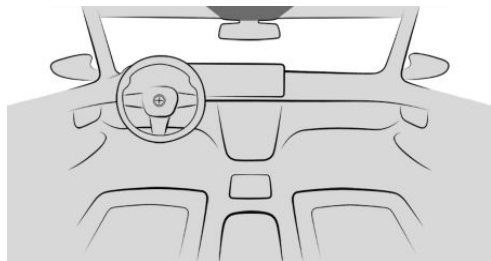


## General information

The glass sunroof and the sun protection are operated using the same switch.

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



Opening/closing the glass sunroof/sun protection.

### Lifting/closing glass sunroof

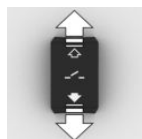


Push switch briefly upward.

- ▶ The closed glass sunroof tilts and the sun protection opens slightly.
- ▶ The opened glass sunroof closes until it is in the tilted position. The sun protection does not move.

- ▶ The tilted glass sunroof closes.

### Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection separately



- ▶ Slide switch back to the resistance point and hold. Holding down the switch opens the sun protection. If the sun protection is already

fully open, the glass sunroof opens.

- ▶ Slide switch forward to the resistance point and hold.

The glass sunroof closes while the switch is being held. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes.

- ▶ Slide the switch back past the resistance point.

The sun protection opens automatically. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens automatically.

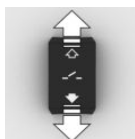
Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

- ▶ Push the switch forward past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof closes automatically. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes automatically.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

### Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection together



- ▶ Briefly press out the switch twice in succession toward the rear past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof and sun protection open together.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

- ▶ Briefly press out the switch twice in succession toward the front past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof and sun protection close together.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

## Comfort position

In some models, the wind noises in the car's interior are lowest when the glass sunroof is not fully open. In these models, the automatic function initially only opens the glass sunroof up to this comfort position.

Pressing the switch in the vehicle interior again opens the glass sunroof fully.

## Jam protection system

### Principle

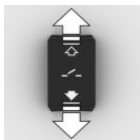
The jam protection prevents objects or body parts from becoming jammed between the roof frame and glass sunroof while the glass sunroof is closing.

### General information

If a resistance or blockage is detected while the glass sunroof is closing, the closing operation is interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position, or it is stopped when closing from the tilted position.

### Closing from the open position without jam protection

If an external hazard or ice prevents normal closure, proceed as follows:



1. Close all doors.
2. Switch on drive-ready state or stop a moving vehicle.
3. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

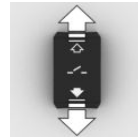
The glass sunroof closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

4. Push the switch forward again past the resistance point and hold until the glass sun-

roof closes without jam protection. Make sure that the closing path is clear.

### Closing from the lifted position without jam protection

In case of danger from the outside or if icing might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:



1. Close all doors.
2. Switch on drive-ready state or stop a moving vehicle.
3. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

### Initializing after a power interruption

#### General information

After a power interruption during the opening or closing process, the glass sunroof can only be operated to a limited extent. Initializing the system can help in this case.

The system can be initialized under the following conditions:

- ▶ The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- ▶ The vehicle will not be moved until the initialization is completed.
- ▶ The drive-ready state is established.
- ▶ The outside temperature is above 41 °F/5 °C.

During initialization, the glass sunroof closes without jam protection.

Make sure that the closing path is clear.



## Initializing the system



Press the switch up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

Initialization begins within 15 seconds.

- ▶ If the glass sunroof is closed, it opens then closes again.
- ▶ If the glass sunroof is open, it first closes, then opens and closes again.
- ▶ The sun protection is initialized in the closed position.

Initialization is complete once the glass sunroof and the sun protection have opened then closed again.

# Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page [8](#).

## Sitting safely

An ideal seat position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seat position plays an important role. Follow the information in the following chapters.

Additional information:

- ▶ Seats, refer to page [93](#).
- ▶ Seat belts, refer to page [98](#).
- ▶ Head restraints, refer to page [100](#).
- ▶ Airbags, refer to page [159](#).

## Seats

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Seat setting while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.

#### **Warning**

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the protective effect of the seat belt can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the seat belt in an accident. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.

#### **Warning**

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

## Manually adjustable seats

### Overview



The levers for setting the seats are located on the front seats.

## Setting the longitudinal direction

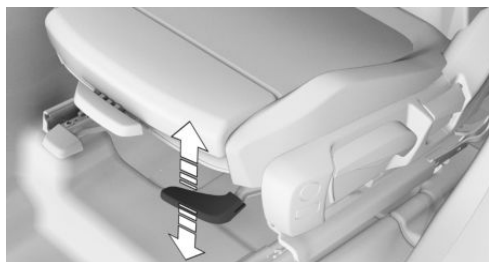
### Warning

Unexpected movements of the seat while driving may occur if the seat is unlocked. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. After adjusting, move the seat forward or back slightly, making sure the seat engages properly.



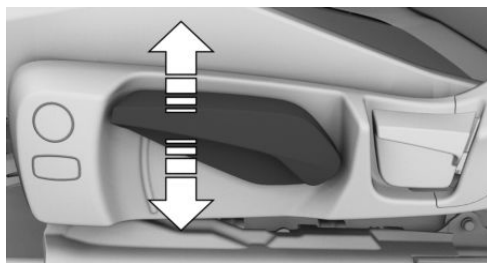
Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

## Adjusting seat tilt



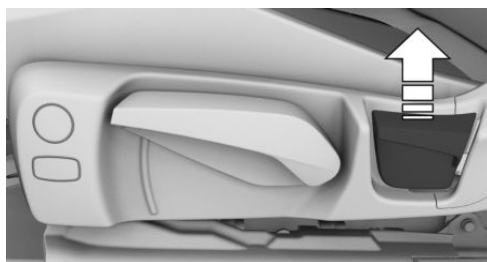
Pull the lever up or press it down as often as needed until the seat has reached the desired inclination.

## Adjusting the height



Pull the lever up or press it down as often as needed until the seat has reached the desired height.

## Adjusting backrest tilt



Pull the lever and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

## Electrically adjustable seats

### General information

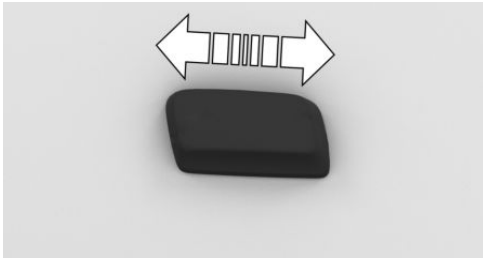
The current seat position can be stored using the memory function.

## Overview



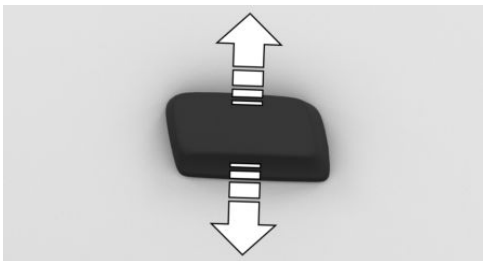
The switches for setting the seats are located on the front seats.

## Setting the longitudinal direction



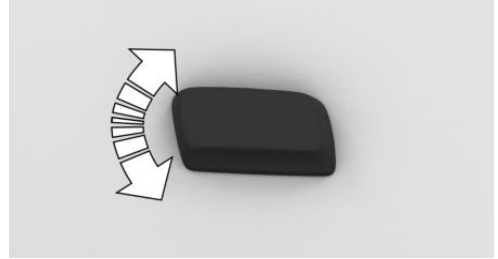
Press switch forward or backward.

## Adjusting the height



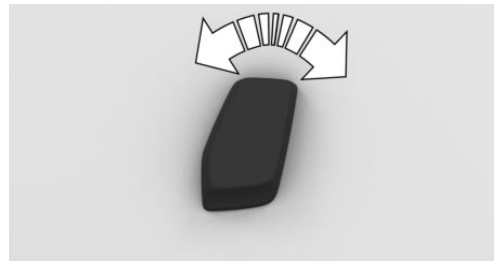
Press switch up or down.

## Adjusting seat tilt



Tilt switch up or down.

## Adjusting backrest tilt



Tilt switch forward or backward.

## Adjusting the seat position automatically

### General information

The seat setting for the driver's seat is stored in the active BMW ID or in the active driver profile. If the BMW ID or the driver profile is reactivated at a later time, the saved position will be called up automatically.

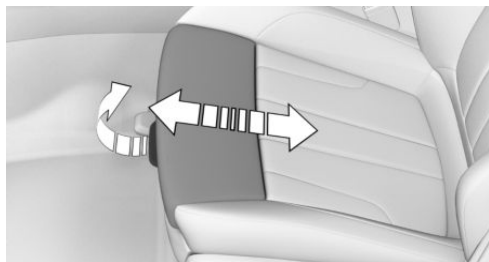
### Activate/deactivate the function

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Seat comfort"
4. Select driver's seat.
5. "Set automatically"
6. Select the desired setting.



## Thigh support

### Sport seat



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and push the thigh support forward or back.

## Lumbar support

### Principle

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright sitting position.

### Adjusting the lumbar support



- ▶ Press the front/rear section of the button:  
The curvature is increased/decreased.
- ▶ Press the upper/lower section of the button:  
The curvature is shifted up/down.

## Backrest width

### Principle

Adjusting the backrest width may improve side support when cornering.

### General information

The backrest width is changed by adjusting the side sections of the backrest.

## Adjusting the backrest width



- ▶ Press the front section of the button:  
The backrest width decreases.
- ▶ Press the rear section of the button:  
The backrest width increases.

## Entering the rear

### Safety information



#### **Warning**

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.



#### **Warning**

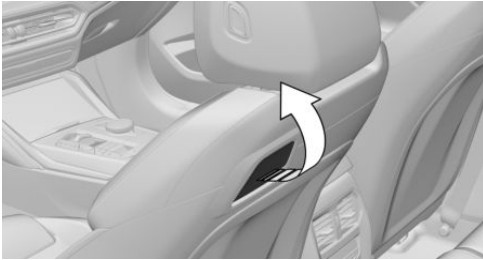
Unexpected movements of the rear seat backrest while driving may occur if the rear seat backrest is unlocked. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of injury. Fold back and lock the backrests before driving. Make sure the backrest engages correctly by slightly moving forward and back.



## Manual longitudinal setting

### Fold the seat backrest forward

1. Pull lever up to the stop.



2. Fold the seat backrest forward.
3. Push the seat forward.

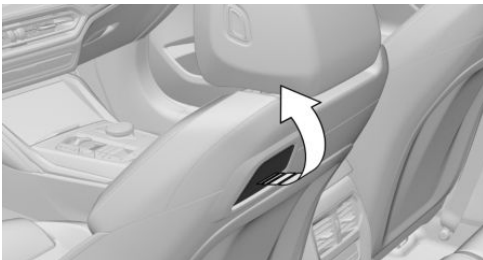
### Push the seat backrest rearward

1. Push the seat back into the initial position.
2. Fold back the backrest to lock the seat.

## Electric longitudinal setting

### Fold the seat backrest forward

1. Pull lever up to the stop.



2. Fold the seat backrest forward.

To make the entry to the rear easier, the seat will automatically move to the most forward position.

The process will be terminated when the switch for the forward/back direction adjustment is pressed or the backrest is reclined.

### Push the seat backrest rearward

Push the seat backrest rearward and lock it.

The seat moves automatically to the last seat position that was stored.

## Calibrating the front seats

### General information

As soon as the electric seat setting no longer functions precisely, a Check Control message is displayed on the control display.

To restore the accuracy of the electric seat setting, the front seats must be calibrated.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

### Calibrating the front seat

1. Press the longitudinal direction switch forward until the seat stops.
2. Press the switch forward again until the seat stops.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

As soon as the message on the control display disappears, the calibration is complete. If the message remains active, repeat the calibration.

If the message is still shown after repeated calibration, have the vehicle checked by a qualified authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Seat belts

### General information

Always make sure that seat belts are being worn by the occupants before driving off. The airbags supplement the seat belts as an additional safety device. The airbags do not replace seat belts.

All seat belt anchorage points are designed to achieve the best possible protective effect for the seat belts when used properly and with the correct seat settings.

Additional information:

Notes on sitting safely, refer to page 93.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Use of a seat belt to buckle more than one person will potentially defeat the ability of the seat belt to serve its protective function. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not strap in more than one person per single seat belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, but must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.

#### **Warning**

The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, can be limited or lost when seat belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened seat belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing seat belts correctly.

#### **Warning**

With a rear seat backrest that is not locked, the protective effect of the middle seat belt is not guaranteed. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. If you are using the middle seat belt, lock the wider rear seat backrest.

#### **Warning**

The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, may not be fully functional or fail in the following situations:

- ▷ The seat belts or seat belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
- ▷ Seat belt tensioners or roll-up mechanism were modified.

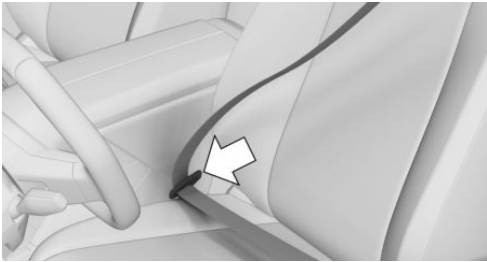
Seat belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not modify seat belts, seat belt buckles, seat belt tensioners, roll-up mechanisms, or belt anchors and keep them clean. After an accident, have the seat belts checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Correct use of seat belts

- ▷ Wear the seat belt tight to your body over your lap and shoulders, without twisting it.
- ▷ Wear the seat belt deep on your hips over your lap. The seat belt must not press on your stomach.
- ▷ Do not rub the seat belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- ▷ Avoid thick clothing.
- ▷ Re-tighten the seat belt frequently upward around your upper body area.

### Buckling the seat belt

- 1. Guide the seat belt slowly over shoulder and hip to put it on.
- 2. Insert the buckle tongue into the seat belt buckle. The seat belt buckle must engage audibly.



When the seat belt is fastened, the driver's and front passenger's belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

To ease accessibility to the seat belt buckle, an adjustable slider is available on the belt to help position the buckle when not in use.

### Unbuckling the seat belt

- 1. Hold down the seat belt firmly.
- 2. Press the red button in the seat belt buckle.
- 3. Guide the seat belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

### Seat belt reminder

#### General information

Make sure that the seat belts are positioned correctly.

The seat belt reminder becomes active in the following situations:

- ▶ When the seat belt on the driver's side or on the passenger's side is not fastened.
- ▶ When the seat belt is unfastened while driving.
- ▶ When objects are lying on a seat.

### Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates after turning on the drive-ready state when the seat belt reminder is active.

A Check Control message is displayed where applicable. Check whether the seat belt has been fastened correctly.

| Icon                                                                              | Meaning                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Seat belt on the driver's seat is not buckled.                                 |
|  | Seat belt on the passenger seat or another seat in the vehicle is not buckled. |
|  | Seat belt is buckled on the corresponding seat.                                |
|  | Seat belt is not buckled on the corresponding seat.                            |

### Rear Occupant Alert

#### Principle

At the end of a trip, the system informs the driver of the possible presence of occupants on the rear seats.

#### General information

If a door with access to the rear row seating is operated within 30 minutes before starting off, a message appears on the control display when the trip is completed and a signal tone sounds.

If the trip is continued within 30 minutes, the message is displayed again after the trip has been completed.

#### Activate/deactivate the function

- 1.  Apps menu
- 2. "System settings"



3. "Rear Occupant Alert"
4. Select the desired setting.

## Front head restraints

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Removal or incorrect adjustment of head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

#### **Warning**

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

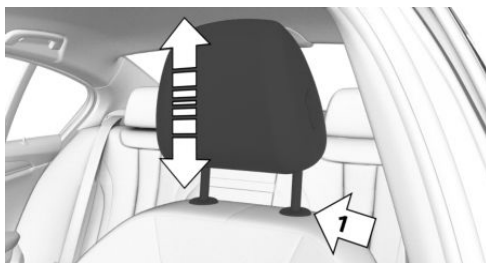
#### **Warning**

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.

- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

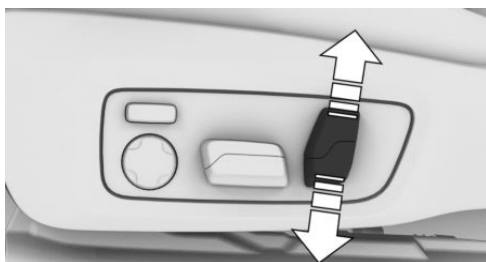
### Adjusting the height



- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- ▷ To raise: push the head restraint up.

After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

### Adjusting the height: M sport seat



Press switch up or down.

### Adjusting the height: M Carbon bucket seat

The height of the head restraints cannot be set.

## Adjusting the distance: Manual head restraints



- ▷ Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- ▷ Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

After setting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

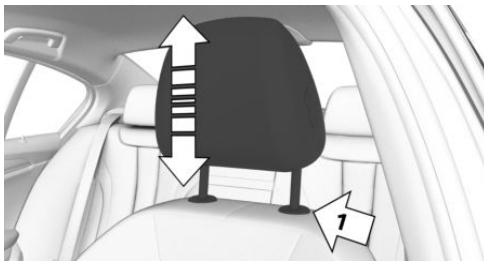
## Adjusting the distance: M Sport seat

The distance to the back of the head is adjusted via the backrest inclination.

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

## Removing the head restraints

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

## Removing the head restraints: M Sport seat

The head restraints cannot be removed.

## Installing head restraints

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

## Rear head restraints

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Removal or incorrect adjustment of head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

#### **Warning**

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

#### **Warning**

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.



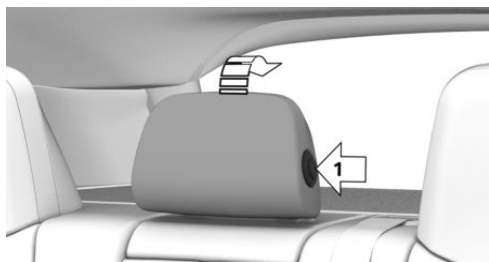
- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

## Folding down the head restraints

### General information

To improve the view to the rear, the head restraints can be folded back. Only fold the head restraint back if no one will be sitting in the corresponding seat.

### Folding down the head restraints



- ▷ To the rear: press the button, arrow 1, and fold the head restraint backward.
- ▷ Forward: fold the head restraint toward the front as far as it will go. Make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

## Adjusting the height



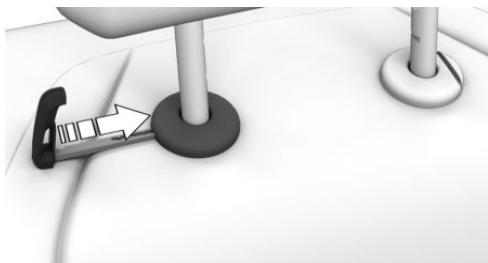
- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- ▷ To raise: push the head restraint up.

After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

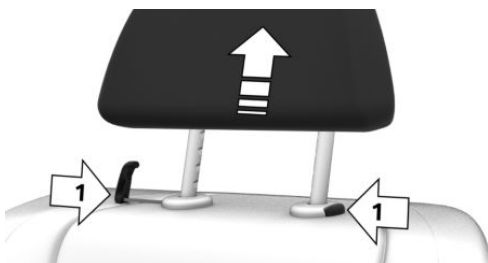
## Removing the head restraint

1. Fold down the rear seat backrest in question.  
Enlarging the cargo area, refer to page [245](#).
2. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
3. Insert the integrated key.

Integrated key, refer to page 69.



4. Press and hold the integrated key and the button at the same time, arrows 1, and pull out the head restraint completely.



## Installing head restraints

For installation, insert the head restraints in the mounts and slide them down until you feel resistance.

After the installation, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

## Exterior mirrors

### General information

The front passenger's side exterior mirror is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

The exterior mirror adjustment is stored in the active BMW ID or in the active driver profile. If the BMW ID or the driver profile is reactivated at a later time, the stored position is called up automatically.

The current exterior mirror adjustment can be stored using the memory function.

## Safety information

### Warning

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the road users behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.

## Overview



| Icon                                                                                | Meaning                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
|    | Fold the exterior mirror in and out.            |
|   | Adjust the exterior mirrors.                    |
|  | Select exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor. |



Fold the exterior mirror in and out.



Adjust the exterior mirrors.



Select exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor.

## Adjusting the exterior mirrors



Press the button.

The selected exterior mirror moves along with the button movement.

## Selecting the exterior mirror



To change over to the other mirror:  
Slide the switch.

## Malfunction

In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the exterior mirror by pressing on the edges of the mirror glass.

## Folding in/folding out the exterior mirrors

### **NOTICE**

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in car washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.



Press the button.

Folding is possible up to a speed of approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

Folding the exterior mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

- ▶ In car washes.
- ▶ On narrow roads.

Exterior mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

## Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated as needed and when the drive-ready state is switched on.

## Automatic dimming

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this.

## Automatic Curb Monitor

### Principle

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the passenger's side is tilted downward. This

improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for instance.

## Activating the Automatic Curb Monitor



1.  slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

## Deactivating the Automatic Curb Monitor

Slide the switch to the front passenger's side exterior mirror position.

## Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature

### General information

The interior mirror is dimmed automatically. Photocells are used for control:

- ▶ In the mirror glass.
- ▶ On the rear of the mirror.

### Overview



## Functional requirements

- ▶ Keep the photocells clean.
- ▶ Do not cover the area between the interior mirror and the windshield.



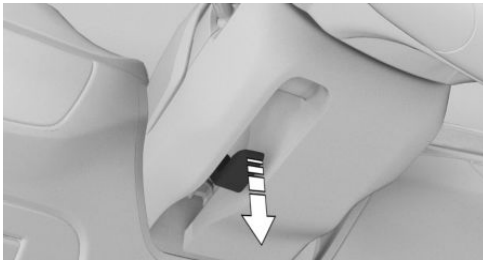
## Steering wheel

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.

### Manual steering wheel adjustment



1. Fold the lever down completely.
2. Grip the steering wheel with both hands and move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

### Steering wheel heating

#### Overview



Button for steering wheel heating

### Turning the steering wheel heating on/off

 Press the button.

A Check Control message is displayed.

If the trip is resumed within approx. 15 minutes after an intermediate stop, the steering wheel heating turns on automatically if the function was turned on at the completion of the last trip.

### Manual transmission: electric steering wheel lock

#### **Warning**

With activated steering wheel locking, the vehicle cannot be steered. There is a risk of accident. Before moving the vehicle, switch on the standby state.

The steering wheel automatically locks when the driver's door is opened from the inside.

To unlock, switch on the standby state.

## Memory function

### Principle

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Exterior mirror adjustment.
- ▷ Height of the Head-up display.

### General information

Two memory locations with different settings can be set for each driver profile.

The following settings are not stored:

- ▷ Backrest width.
- ▷ Lumbar support.

## Safety information

### **Warning**

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected seat or steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.

### **Warning**

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

## Calling up settings

Press the desired memory button 1 or 2.

The stored position is called up.

The procedure stops when a seat setting switch or one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

The adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is interrupted after a short time while driving.

## Seat climate control

Various climate control functions are available for the seats.

Additional information:

Climate operation, refer to page [223](#).

## Overview



The memory buttons are located on the front doors.

## Storing settings

1. Set the desired position.

2.  Press the button. The LED illuminates.
3. Press the desired memory button 1 or 2 while the LED is illuminated. A signal sounds.

# Transporting children safely

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## The right place for children

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

#### **Warning**

A hot vehicle may result in death to persons, especially children, or animals. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not leave persons, especially children, or animals unattended in the vehicle.

#### **Warning**

Exposure to intense sunlight can cause child restraint systems and their components to become very hot. Persons may sustain burn injuries when touching the hot components. There is a risk of injury. Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight or cover where necessary. If necessary, let the child restraint system cool down before transporting a child. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.

### Children in the rear seat

#### General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm should be transported in the rear seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a seat belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight, or size.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

The seat belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft/150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, can be limited or lost when seat belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened seat belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Secure children



shorter than 5 ft/150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.

## Children on the front passenger seat

### General information

Before using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, ensure that the front, knee, and side airbags on the passenger's side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags, refer to page 161.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light illuminates.

## Installing child restraint systems

### General information

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

## Safety information

#### **Warning**

The protective effect of child restraint systems and their fastening systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident can be limited or lost. A child cannot be properly restrained in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury or danger to life.

Do not use child restraint systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident.

If attachment systems have been damaged or strained by an accident, have them checked and replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

#### **Warning**

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat setting or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible and necessary, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

## On the front passenger seat

### Deactivating the airbags

#### **Warning**

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags

are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light illuminates.

Before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the passenger's side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags, refer to page 161.

### Seat position and height

After installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and, if possible, bring it up to the highest position. This seat position and height ensure the best possible position for the belt and offers optimal protection in the event of an accident.

After mounting a universal child restraint system, adjust the tilt of the seat backrest so that the belt is not constrained.

If the upper attachment point of the seat belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child restraint seat, move the front passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

### Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: Before installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

## Child seat security



The seat belts in the rear and the front passenger seat belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

### Locking the seat belt

1. Pull out the belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the seat belt.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system.  
The seat belt is disabled.

### Unlocking the seat belt

1. Unbuckle the seat belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in completely.

## LATCH child restraint fixing system

### General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Pay attention to the specifications, operating tips and safety instructions from the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using LATCH child restraint fixing systems.

## Mounts for lower anchors

### General information

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lbs/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

If the lower mountings of the child restraint system are not correctly engaged, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the lower mountings are correctly engaged and that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest.

#### **Warning**

The mounts for the lower mountings and attachment points of the child restraint system are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. If other objects are attached, the mounts or attachment points can be damaged. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only attach child restraint systems at the corresponding mounts for the lower mountings or attachment points.

## Position

| Icon                                                                              | Meaning                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The corresponding icon shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors.</p> <p>Seats equipped with lower mountings are marked with a pair (2) of LATCH icons.</p> <p>For vehicles equipped with a middle seat:</p> <p>It is not recommended to use the inner lower mountings of standard outer LATCH positions to fasten a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle seat belt instead for the middle seat.</p> |

### Before attaching child restraint systems

Pull the seat belt away from the area of the child seat mountings.

### Installing child restraint systems

1. Mount child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Make sure that the child restraint system mount is correctly engaged in the lower anchor on both sides.

## Child restraint systems with tether strap

### General information

When attaching child restraint systems to the upper attachment points, observe the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer.

## Safety information

### Warning

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect is reduced. There is a risk of injury. Ensure that the upper retaining strap is guided to the upper attachment point without twisting and not over sharp edges.

### Warning

If the rear seat backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or nonexistent. In certain situations, for instance braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear seat backrest can fold forward. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the rear seat backrests are locked.

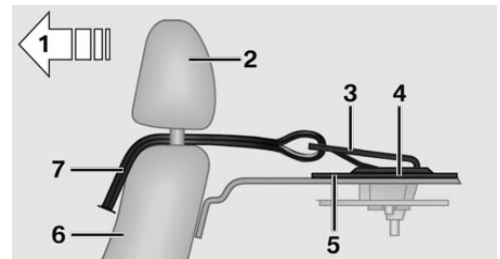
### Warning

The mounts for the lower mountings and attachment points of the child restraint system are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. If other objects are attached, the mounts or attachment points can be damaged. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only attach child restraint systems at the corresponding mounts for the lower mountings or attachment points.

## Attachment points for upper retaining strap

| Icon                                                                                                                                                                   | Meaning                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <br> | The respective icon shows the attachment point for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this icon. It is located on the rear seat backrest, the rear shelf or the rear seat. |

## Routing the retaining strap



- 1 Driving direction
- 2 Head restraint
- 3 Hook for upper retaining strap
- 4 Attachment point
- 5 Rear shelf
- 6 Seat backrest
- 7 Upper retaining strap

## Attaching the upper retaining strap to the attachment point

1. Open the attachment point cover.
2. If necessary, raise the head restraint.
3. Guide the upper retaining strap between the head restraint mounts or along both sides of the head restraint to the attachment point.



4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the attachment point.
5. Tighten the retaining strap.



# Driving

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## Start/Stop button

### Principle

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches drive-ready state on or off.

### General information

Manual transmission: the drive-ready state is switched on when you depress the clutch pedal while pressing the Start/Stop button.

M Steptronic Sport transmission: the drive-ready state is switched on when you depress the brake pedal while pressing the Start/Stop button.

Pressing the Start/Stop button again switches the drive-ready state back off and standby state is switched back on.

Additional information:

- ▶ Drive-ready state, refer to page 40.
- ▶ Standby state, refer to page 40.

### Driving off

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. Apply gear position.
3. Driving off.

## Auto Start/Stop function

### Principle

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic jam or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains switched on. The engine starts automatically for driving off.

### General information

After each engine start using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is ready.

The function is activated at low speeds.

### Engine stop

### Functional requirements

The engine is switched off automatically when stopping under the following conditions:

Manual transmission:

- ▶ Neutral is engaged and the clutch pedal is not pressed.
- ▶ The driver's seat belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

- ▶ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- ▶ The brake pedal remains depressed while the vehicle is at a standstill or the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold.
- ▶ The driver's seat belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

### M Steptronic Sport transmission: Manual engine stop

If the engine was not switched off automatically when the vehicle stopped, the engine can be switched off manually:



- ▷ Depress the brake pedal forcefully again from the current pedal position.
- ▷ Engage selector lever position P.

When all functional preconditions are fulfilled, the engine switches off.

## Air conditioning system when the engine is switched off

The air flow from the air conditioning system is reduced when the engine is switched off.

## Display in the instrument cluster



The display in the instrument cluster indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an automatic engine start.

## Indications on the control display

### Total time with switched-off engine

The total time for which the Auto Start/Stop function has switched off the engine is displayed in the trip data.

The total time is automatically reset every time the vehicle is refueled.

## Functional limitations

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ In case of a steep downhill grade.
- ▷ The brake pedal was not pressed hard enough.
- ▷ When the ambient temperature is high and automatic climate control is switched on.
- ▷ The vehicle interior has not yet been heated or cooled as desired.
- ▷ When window condensation is possible and automatic climate control is switched on.
- ▷ Engine or other parts are not at operating temperature.
- ▷ Engine cooling is required.

- ▷ The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
- ▷ Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- ▷ At higher elevations.
- ▷ Hood is unlocked.
- ▷ The Automatic Parking Assistant is activated.
- ▷ For stop-and-go traffic.
- ▷ M Steptronic Sport transmission: selector lever in position N, S, or R.
- ▷ After driving in reverse.

## Starting the engine

### Functional requirements

The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

Manual transmission:

- ▷ By pressing the clutch pedal.

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

- ▷ By releasing the brake pedal.
- ▷ When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

## Driving off

Accelerating as usual after starting the engine.

## Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:

- ▷ The driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- ▷ Hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lights illuminate for a varied length of time.

The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

## System limits

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

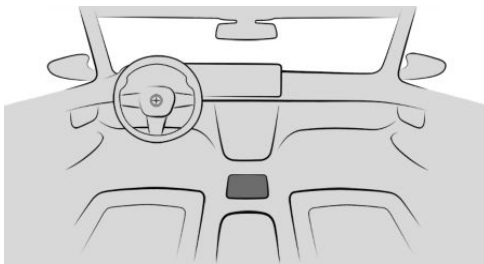
- ▶ With excessive warming of the interior when cooling is turned on.
- ▶ With excessive cooling of the interior when heating is turned on.
- ▶ When window condensation is possible and automatic climate control is switched on.
- ▶ In case of a steering operation.
- ▶ M Steptronic Sport transmission:  
When changing selector lever position from D or P.
- ▶ In case of seriously discharged vehicle battery.
- ▶ When starting an oil level measurement.

## Deactivating the system manually

### Principle

The engine is not automatically switched off.  
The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.

### Via button



Press the button.

- ▶ LED comes on: Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
- ▶ LED off: Auto Start/Stop function is enabled.

### Via iDrive

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Drivetrain and chassis"
5. "Auto Start/Stop"
6. Select the desired setting.

### M Steptronic Sport transmission: via selector lever position

The Auto Start/Stop function is also disabled in selector lever position S.

### Using the M1/M2 buttons on the steering wheel

The Auto Start/Stop function can be activated/deactivated using the M1 or M2 buttons on the steering wheel.

Additional information:

M Setup menu, refer to page [181](#).

### Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

If the engine stops automatically, the vehicle can be parked safely, for example to leave it.

Manual transmission:

1. Press the Start/Stop button.
  - ▶ Drive-ready state is switched off.
  - ▶ Standby state is switched on.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

1. Press the Start/Stop button.
  - ▶ Drive-ready state is switched off.
  - ▶ Standby state is switched on.
  - ▶ Selector lever position P is engaged automatically.
2. Set the parking brake.



## Automatic deactivation

In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, for instance if no driver is detected.

## Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. You may continue driving. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Manual transmission

### Safety information



#### Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

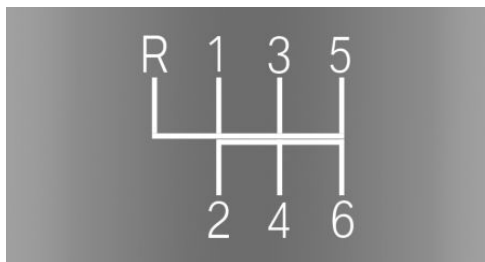
- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.



#### NOTICE

When shifting to a lower gear, excessive RPM can damage the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. When shifting into 5th or 6th gear, press the gearshift lever to the right.

## Shift pattern



- ▷ 1–6: forward gears.
- ▷ R: reverse gear.

## Shifting

### Gear Shift Assistant

When the Gear Shift Assistant is activated, the rpm will be adjusted automatically during a shifting operation for a fast gear change.

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

The Gear Shift Assistant can be deactivated/activated via the M Setup menu.

Additional information:

M Setup menu, refer to page [181](#).

### Reverse gear

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

To overcome the resistance push the gearshift lever dynamically to the left and engage reverse gear with a forward shifting movement.

## Rolling or pushing the vehicle

In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own power, for instance in a car wash, or be pushed.

1. Turn on standby state.
2. Press on the clutch pedal and shift out of a forward gear or reverse.
3. Release the parking brake.

# M Steptronic Sport transmission

## General information

The M Steptronic Sport transmission is operated via the selector lever or the two shift paddles on the steering wheel.

The following functions are available:

- ▶ Various driving programs: Drive mode or sequential mode.
- ▶ Low Speed Assistant.
- ▶ Various Drivelogic programs.
- ▶ Launch Control.
- ▶ Upshifting display, Shift lights.

## Safety information

### Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away, e.g. by applying the parking brake.

## Overview

### Selector lever



## Selector lever functions

| Icon                                                                              | Function                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
|  | DriveLogic modes.                  |
| R                                                                                 | Reverse gear.                      |
| N                                                                                 | Neutral.                           |
|  | Center position, forward position. |
| -                                                                                 | Downshifting, manual.              |
| +                                                                                 | Upshifting, manual.                |
| D/S                                                                               | Drive mode or sequential mode.     |
| P                                                                                 | Parking.                           |

## Selector lever positions

### D is Drive mode

Selector lever position for driving. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

### S is Sequential mode

Selector lever position for driving. All gears for forward travel must be shifted manually.

### R is reverse

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

### N Neutral

In selector lever position N, the vehicle may be pushed or roll without power, for instance, in car washes.

### P Park

Selector lever position, for instance for parking the vehicle. The transmission blocks the drive wheels in selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.



Selector lever position P is engaged automatically in situations such as the following:

- ▶ After the drive-ready state or standby state is switched off and selector lever position D/S or R is engaged.
- ▶ After the standby state has been switched off when selector lever position N is engaged.
- ▶ The driver's seat belt is unbuckled, the driver's door is opened, and the brake pedal is not pressed while the vehicle is stationary and the selector lever is set to D/S or R.

## Engaging a selector lever position

### General information

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a gear position or reverse, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to drive off.

The engaged selector lever position is displayed in the instrument cluster and on the selector lever.

### Functional requirements

Only when the drive-ready state is switched on and the brake pedal is depressed is it possible to change from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.

### Engaging selector lever position D/S, N, R

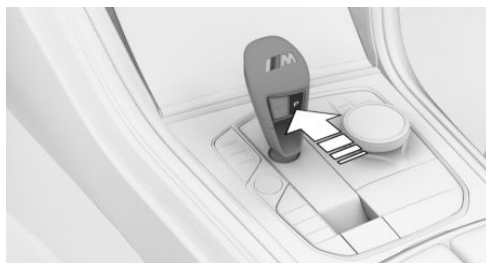


With the driver's seat belt fastened, press on the brake pedal and pull or push the selector

lever in the required direction. The selector lever automatically returns to the center position when released.

In selector lever position R, the selector lever locks.

### Engaging selector lever position P



Press button P.

## Rolling or pushing the vehicle

### General information

In some situations, the vehicle is supposed to roll without its own power for a short distance, for instance in a car wash or to be pushed.

### Engaging selector lever position N

#### NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. The wheels are blocked. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch off standby if the vehicle is meant to coast, e.g., in a car wash.

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, deactivate Automatic Hold.  
Automatic Hold, refer to page [125](#).
4. Depress the brake pedal.

5. Engage selector lever position N.
6. Switch off drive-ready state.

In this way, standby state remains switched on, and a Check Control message is displayed.

The vehicle can roll.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically after approximately 35 minutes.

If there is a malfunction, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

Electronically unlock the transmission lock, if needed.

Additional information:

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock, refer to page [122](#).

## Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum drive power in Drive mode.

Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

## Drive mode D/S

### Principle

In Drive mode, all forward gears are automatically changed.

### Activating Drive mode



Push the selector lever out of the center position in the D/S direction.

Drive mode is activated. The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster along with a D, e.g., 1 D.

### Deactivating Drive mode

Push the selector lever out of Drive mode in the D/S direction. Sequential mode is activated.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., 1.

## Sequential mode D/S

### Principle

In sequential mode, it is possible to shift gears manually using the selector lever or the shift paddles without letting off the gas.

### General information

Shortly before falling below a gear-dependent minimum speed, the transmission is automatically downshifted.

Once the maximum engine speed is attained, upshifting is not automatically performed in sequential mode and the kickdown is deactivated.

It is also possible to drive off in 2nd gear; for instance, on icy roads.

### Activating sequential mode



Push the selector lever out of Drive mode in the D/S direction, arrow 1, or shift via the selector lever, arrows at 2.



Sequential mode is activated. The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., 1.

### Deactivating sequential mode

Push the selector lever out of the center position in the D/S direction. Drive mode is activated.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster along with a D, e.g., 1 D.

## Gear change

### Principle

Manual gear-shifting is possible via the shift paddles or the selector lever in sequential mode.

The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to change gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

### General information

#### Shifting

Gears will only be shifted at appropriate engine and road speeds; for instance, downshifting is not possible if the engine speed is too high.

The lowest possible gear is selected by simultaneously operating the kickdown and moving the selector lever forward or actuating the left shift paddle.

#### Temporary sequential mode

After a shift paddle is actuated in Drive mode, the system temporarily switches to sequential mode.

After conservative driving in sequential mode without acceleration or shifting via the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to Drive mode.

### Permanent sequential mode

Sequential mode remains permanently active if it was active before the shift paddle was actuated.

### Switching to Drive mode

It is possible to switch to Drive mode as follows: pull and hold the right shift paddle.

### Switching via the selector lever

- ▶ Upshifting: pull the selector lever rearwards.
- ▶ Downshifting: press the selector lever forward.

A shift in Drive mode causes a switch to Sequential mode.

### Switching via the shift paddles



- ▶ Upshift: pull right shift paddle.
- ▶ Downshift: pull left shift paddle.

### Display on the selector lever

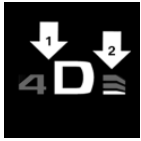
The actually engaged transmission position can deviate from the selector lever position in some situations. The display in the selector lever flashes.

Observe the display in the instrument cluster in these cases.



## Displays in the instrument cluster

### Drive mode



- ▶ Engaged gear together with a D, arrow 1.
- ▶ Selected Drivelogic program, arrow 2.

### Sequential mode



- ▶ Gear shift indicator, arrow 1.
- ▶ Engaged gear, arrow 2.
- ▶ Selected Drivelogic program, arrow 3.

### Notice

When the outside temperature is very low, the display may not work. Current driving direction is recognizable at the engaged selector lever position.

## Low Speed Assistant

### Principle

The Low Speed Assistant gives assistance at very low speeds. The vehicle moves at walking speed.

### General information

Use the Low Speed Assistant for maneuvering or in stop-and-go traffic.

The Low Speed Assistant can also be used for rocking the vehicle free in the snow. To do this, change over between reverse gear and forward gear without stepping on the brakes in the process.

### Activating

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.

3. If necessary, deactivate Automatic Hold.
4. Engage selector lever position D/S or R.
5. Release brake.

In 1st and 2nd gear and in reverse, the vehicle rolls at minimum speed.

### Deactivating

Decelerate the vehicle to a stop.

## Drivelogic

### Principle

Drivelogic changes the gear-shifting characteristics of the M Steptronic Sport transmission. For example, the shifting points are changed in Drive mode and the shifting times in sequential mode.

### General information

Three Drivelogic programs are available.

Whenever you switch between Sequential mode and Drive mode, the last program selected is enabled.

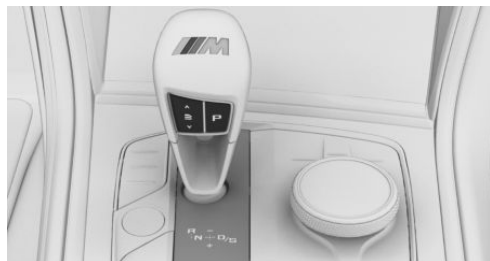
If drive-ready state is switched on after the vehicle has been idle, DriveLogic program D1 is enabled in Drive mode.

### Drivelogic programs

| Pro-gram                                                                                  | Drive mode         | Sequential mode                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------------|
|  D1/S1 | Efficient driving. | Comfortable shifting operations.        |
|  D2/S2 | Fast driving.      | Sporty, fast shifting operations.       |
|  D3/S3 | Sporty driving.    | Maximum shifting speed, Launch Control. |

## Selecting a DriveLogic program

Via the rocker switch on the selector lever



Press the rocker switch repeatedly until the desired DriveLogic program is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required DriveLogic program for buttons M1 or M2.

1.  Press the button.
2. "M1 CONFIGURATION" or "M2 CONFIGURATION"
3. "Transmiss."
4. Selecting the desired DriveLogic program
  - ▷ "D1" to "D3": Drive mode.
  - ▷ "S1" to "S3": sequential mode.

The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:



Additional information:

M Setup menu, refer to page [181](#).

## Display in the instrument cluster



The DriveLogic program selected corresponds to the number of illuminated fields.

## Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock

### General information

Unlock the transmission lock electronically, e.g., to maneuver the vehicle out of a hazardous area in the event of a malfunction.

Unlocking is possible, if the starter can crank the engine.

Before unlocking the transmission lock, set the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

### Engaging selector lever position N

1. Press and hold down brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. The starter must audibly start. Hold the Start/Stop button pressed.
3. With your free hand, press and hold the selector lever in selector lever position N, until selector lever position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.

A Check Control message is displayed.

4. Release Start/Stop button and selector lever.
5. Release brake, as soon as the starter stops.
6. Maneuver the vehicle from the hazardous area and secure it against rolling away.

Additional information:

Tow-starting/towing, refer to page [304](#).

## Launch Control

### Principle

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on roads with good traction under dry surrounding conditions.

### General information

The use of Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in.

Do not steer the steering wheel when driving off with Launch Control.

Additional information:

Break-in, refer to page [249](#).

### Functional requirements

Launch Control is available when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted trip of at least 6 miles/10 km.

### Starting with launch control

#### Manual transmission

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. Activate M Dynamic Mode.  
M Dynamic Mode (MDM), refer to page [187](#).
3. Step on the clutch pedal.
4. Engage first gear.
5. Press the accelerator pedal all the way down.  
A destination flag is displayed in the instrument cluster.  
Preparing Launch Control. An appropriate Check Control message is displayed.  
Keep the accelerator pedal in this position.

6. The starting engine speed adjusts. With sufficiently high starting torque, the Launch Control is active.  
An appropriate Check Control message is displayed.  
Disengage the clutch quickly within approx. 6 seconds. The vehicle accelerates.
7. Observe the Shift lights and upshift on time.

#### M Steptronic Sport transmission

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. Deactivate the Dynamic Stability Control.  
Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page [186](#).
3. Select sequential mode with gear 1 and Drivelogic program S3.
4. With your left foot, forcefully press down on the brake.
5. Press and hold down the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.  
A destination flag is displayed in the instrument cluster.  
Preparing Launch Control. An appropriate Check Control message is displayed.  
Keep the accelerator pedal in this position.
6. The starting engine speed adjusts. With sufficiently high starting torque, the Launch Control is active.  
An appropriate Check Control message is displayed.  
Now release the brake. The vehicle accelerates.  
Upshifting occurs automatically as long as the destination flag is displayed and the accelerator pedal is not released.

#### Repeated use during a trip

After Launch Control has been used, it is necessary to drive a certain distance before Launch Control can be used again. Launch

Control adjusts to the surrounding conditions, when used again.

## After using Launch Control

To support driving stability, reactivate Dynamic Stability Control as soon as possible.

## System limits

Manual transmission: if drive-off is delayed, the Launch Control is automatically terminated to protect the engine.

The best acceleration figures are reached with sport tires at operating temperature.

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

## Parking brake

### Principle

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling away when it is parked.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

#### **Warning**

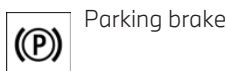
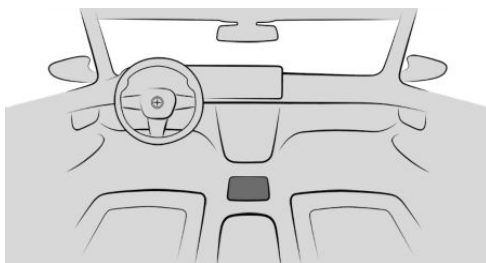
Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

### Overview

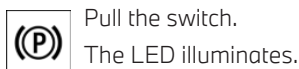
#### Button in the vehicle



Parking brake

### Setting the parking brake

#### With a stationary vehicle



Pull the switch.  
The LED illuminates.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red.

The parking brake is set.

## While driving

Use while driving serves as an emergency braking function.



Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the switch is being pulled.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red, a signal sounds, and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking brake is engaged when the vehicle is stationary.

## Releasing the parking brake

### Releasing the parking brake manually

1. Turn on drive-ready state.



2. Manual transmission: press the switch while the brake pedal is depressed.



M Steptronic Sport transmission: press the switch while the brake is depressed or selector lever position P is set.

The LED and the indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

### Releasing the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is released automatically when you drive off.

The LED and the indicator light go out.

## Malfunction

If the parking brake fails or malfunctions, secure the vehicle so that it does not roll away before you exit.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Secure the vehicle against rolling away, for instance with a wheel chock, after getting out of the vehicle.

## After a power interruption

To reestablish parking brake operability after a power interruption, an initialization may be required.

1. Turn on standby state.



2. Pull the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set and then push.

This process may take a few seconds. Some mechanical sounds associated with this process are normal.



The indicator light is no longer illuminated as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation again.

## M Steptronic Sport transmission: Automatic Hold

### Principle

Automatic Hold assists the driver by automatically setting and releasing the brake, such as when moving in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

On uphill grades the system prevents the vehicle from rolling back when driving off.

### General information

The parking brake is automatically engaged under the following conditions:

- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched off.
- ▷ The driver's door is opened while the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ The moving vehicle is brought to a standstill using the parking brake.

## Safety information

### **Warning**

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

### **Warning**

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

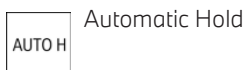
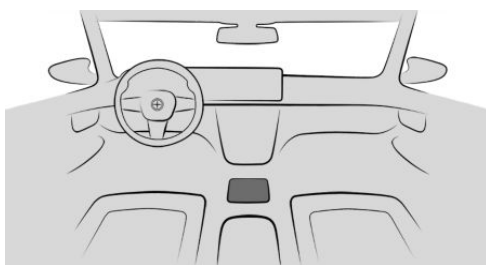
There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

### **NOTICE**

If the vehicle is stationary, Automatic Hold engages the parking brake and prevents the vehicle from rolling in a car wash. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate Automatic Hold prior to entering the car wash.

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



### Activating Automatic Hold

1. Turn on drive-ready state.

2.  Press the button.  
The LED illuminates.

 The indicator light illuminates green. Automatic Hold is activated.

After every vehicle restart, the last selected setting is active.

### Automatic Hold holding the vehicle

Automatic Hold is activated and the driver's door is closed.

 After stopping, the vehicle is automatically secured against rolling away as

soon as the indicator light illuminates green.

## Driving off

Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator light of the parking brake is no longer illuminated.

## Automatic parking brake application

The parking brake is automatically set if drive-ready state is switched off while the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold or if the vehicle is exited.



The indicator light changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not set automatically if the drive-ready state was switched off while the vehicle was coasting. Automatic Hold is temporarily deactivated in this case.

## Deactivate Automatic Hold



Press the button.

The LED goes out.



The indicator light goes out.

Automatic Hold is switched off.

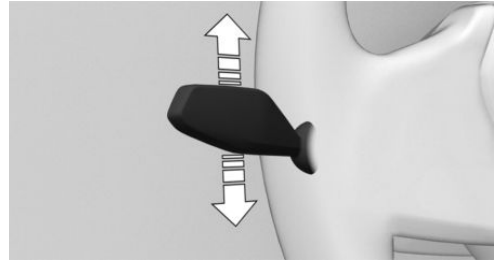
If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, also press on the brake pedal when switching off.

## Turn signal

### Turn signal in exterior mirror

When driving and during operation of the turn signals or hazard warning system, do not fold in the exterior mirrors so that the turn signal lamps on the exterior mirror are easy to see.

## Flashing



Press the lever past the resistance point.

## Triple turn signal activation

Lightly tap the lever up or down.

The triple turn signal duration can be adjusted.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. "One-touch turn signal"
6. Select the desired setting.

## Brief flashing

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

## High beams, headlight flasher

Press the lever forward or pull it backward.



- ▶ High beams on, arrow 1.  
The high beams illuminate when the low beams are switched on.
- ▶ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when the high beams are turned on.

## Window wiper system

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded-away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

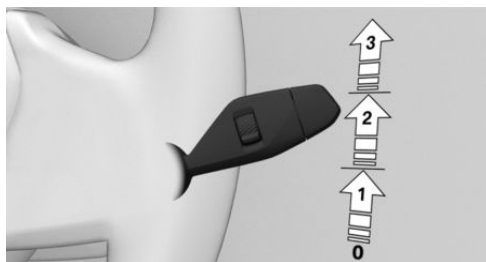
#### **NOTICE**

The wiper blades can wear out or become damaged prematurely when wiping on a dry window for a longer period of time. The wiper motor can overheat. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use the wipers when the window is dry.

#### **NOTICE**

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

### Turning on window wiper system



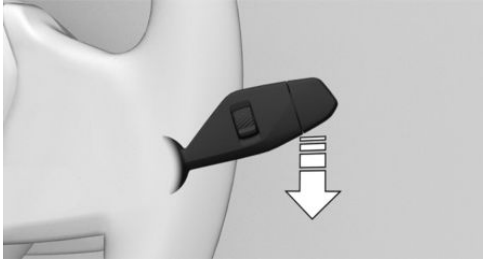
Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▶ Resting position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▶ Rain sensor, position 1.
- ▶ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- ▶ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

When the journey is interrupted with the window wiper system turned on: when the journey continues, the wipers resume at their previous speed.



## Turning off the window wiper system and flick wipe



Press the lever down.

- ▶ Turning off: press the lever down until it reaches the 0 position.
- ▶ Flick wipe: press the lever down from the 0 position.  
The lever automatically returns to its 0 position when released.

## Rain sensor

### Principle

The rain sensor automatically controls the wiper operation depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

### General information

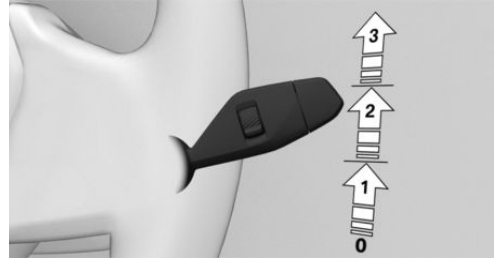
The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror.

### Safety information

#### NOTICE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in car washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes.

## Activating rain sensor



Press lever up once from the 0 position, arrow 1.

Wiping operation is started.

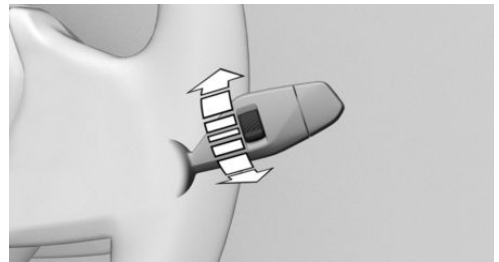
The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

In frosty conditions, wiping operation may not start.

## Deactivating rain sensor

Press lever back into the 0 position.

## Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

- ▶ Upward: high rain sensor sensitivity.
- ▶ Downward: low rain sensor sensitivity.



## Windshield washer system

### Safety information

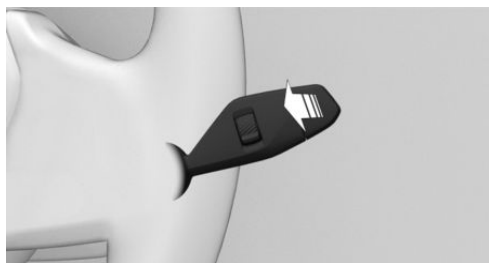
#### **Warning**

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of accident. Only use the washer systems if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use washer fluid with antifreeze, if needed.

#### **NOTICE**

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the washer pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

### Cleaning the windshield



Pull the lever.

The washer fluid is sprayed onto the windshield directly in front of the wiper blade when the wiper moves upward.

### Fold-out position of the wipers

#### Principle

In the fold-out position, the wipers can be folded out from the windshield, which is important, for instance, when changing the wiper

blades or for folding away under frosty conditions.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

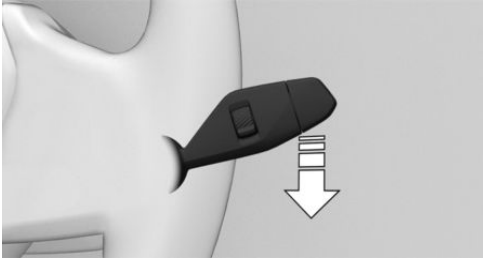
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded-away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

#### **NOTICE**

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

## Folding out the wipers

1. Turn on standby state.
2. Press and hold the wiper lever down until the wipers stop in a nearly vertical position.



3. Fold the wipers all the way out from the windshield.



## Folding in the wipers

1. Fold the wipers back in onto the windshield.
2. Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.  
Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

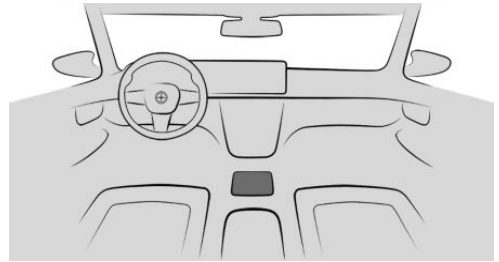
## M Engine Dynamics Control

### Principle

M Engine Dynamics Control affects the vehicle engine's response to movements of the accelerator pedal.

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



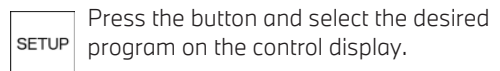
## Programs

| Program      | Response characteristics                                                                        |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| "EFFICIENT"  | Efficient, comfortable. Minimal consumption.<br>Ideal, for instance in city traffic or on snow. |
| "SPORT"      | Sporty, dynamic.                                                                                |
| "SPORT PLUS" | Spontaneous, direct. Maximum dynamics.                                                          |

The SPORT and SPORT PLUS programs change the sound characteristics of the exhaust system. The sound takes on a sporty nature.

## Selecting a program

### Using the button



Press the button and select the desired program on the control display.

### Via iDrive

M Engine Dynamics Control settings can be configured in M Setup.



Additional information:  
M Setup, refer to page [181](#).

## Display in the instrument cluster



When the display for M Setup is activated in the instrument cluster, the selected program is displayed.

Additional information:  
Central display area, refer to page [145](#)

## Sound control

### Principle

The sound control function changes the sound characteristics of the exhaust system.

### General information

When sound control is switched on, the sound of the exhaust system takes on a sporty nature.

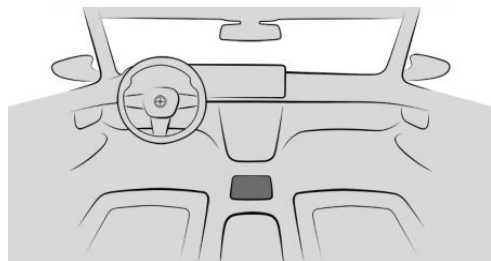
When sound control is switched off, the sound is focused on comfort.

During the engine warm-up phase, sound control does not have any effect on the sound of the exhaust system.

Additional information:  
High-performance engine, refer to page [248](#).

### Overview

### Button in the vehicle



Sound control

## Activate/deactivate the function

### Using the button



Press button to activate or deactivate the sound control.

Depending on the equipment, a Check Control message is displayed when the Sound Control is turned on or an LED will illuminate in the button.

### Via iDrive

Sound control settings can be configured in M Setup.

Additional information:  
M Setup, refer to page [181](#).



# Displays

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## Instrument cluster

### Principle

The instrument cluster comprises various digital displays, e.g., a speedometer, time, range, temperatures as well as indicator and warning lights.

### General information

Some of the displays in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Manual.

The view on the instrument cluster can vary depending on the selected driving mode. The driving mode is set using the M MODE button.

The following M MODE views are available:

- ▶ "ROAD": standard view of the instrument cluster for comfort-oriented driving. All displays for driver assistance systems and collision warning systems are enabled.
- ▶ "SPORT": M View to assist a sporty driving style. The displays for driver assistance systems and collision warning systems are reduced to a minimum.
- ▶ Depending on the equipment:  
"TRACK": M View for driving on a race track. The driver assistance and collision warning system displays are deactivated.

Additional information:

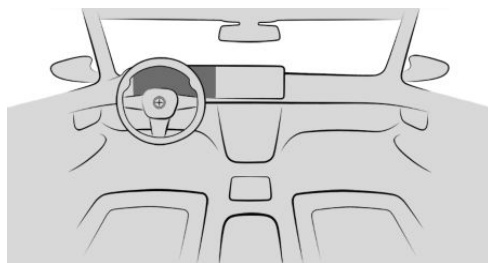
M MODE, refer to page 183.

## Safety information

### Warning

If the displays on the instrument cluster fail, do not use the vehicle. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe manner. If drive-ready state is switched off and on again, the malfunction may be rectified and it may be possible to continue driving. If the malfunction cannot be corrected, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Overview

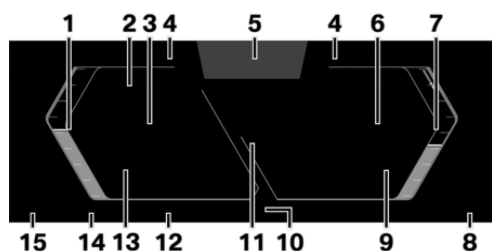


Instrument cluster

## Display ranges on the instrument cluster

The contents of the instrument cluster are shown using the standard view as an example. This view is displayed in the following driving mode:

"ROAD":



- 1 Speedometer
- 2 Driver assistance systems [192](#)  
Parking assistance systems [208](#)
- 3 Digital speedometer [142](#)
- 4 Shift lights [144](#)
- 5 Depending on the equipment: Driver Attention Camera
- 6 Manual transmission: transmission display [116](#)  
M Steptronic Sport transmission: gear display with Drivelogic [121](#)  
Gear shift indicator [143](#)
- 7 Tachometer [143](#)
- 8 Outside temperature [144](#)
- 9 Engine oil temperature [144](#)
- 10 Driving stability control systems [180](#)
- 11 Central display range [145](#)  
Check Control [141](#)  
Selection lists [142](#)  
M Drift Analyzer [190](#)
- 12 Speed Limit Info [192](#)  
Speed Limit Assistant [205](#)
- 13 Fuel gauge [148](#)
- 14 Range [148](#)
- 15 Time [148](#)

Additional information:

Indicator/warning lights, refer to page [136](#).

## Operating elements on the steering wheel

| Operating element                                                                 | Function                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Display the menu bar on the instrument cluster.                                             |
|  | Press the corresponding arrow key to move the selection.                                    |
|  | Turn knurled wheel: scroll selection up or down.<br>Press knurled wheel: confirm selection. |

## Settings

Specific displays can be configured individually, e.g., a second actual speed.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. Select the desired setting.

## Live Vehicle

### Principle

Live Vehicle is a virtual representation of your own vehicle with different information, e.g., vehicle status or energy flow indicators.

### General information

Appropriate information is shown on the control display depending on the driving situation. Fault statuses are not taken into account.

## Adaptive content

The following content is displayed in alternating order and, if necessary, depending on the selected drive mode:

- ▷ Vehicle status, refer to page 149.
- ▷ Current driving condition, refer to page 149.
- ▷ Sport displays, refer to page 150.
- ▷ Trip data, refer to page 146.

## Static information

The following information may be shown permanently on the control display regardless of the driving situation and driving mode set.

- ▷ Vehicle status.
- ▷ Trip data.

## Adjusting the display

In the Live Vehicle menu, you can choose between an adaptive display and static content.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Content"
5. Select the desired setting.

## BMW Head-up display

### Principle

The Head-up display projects important information in the driver's field of view, for instance the speed.

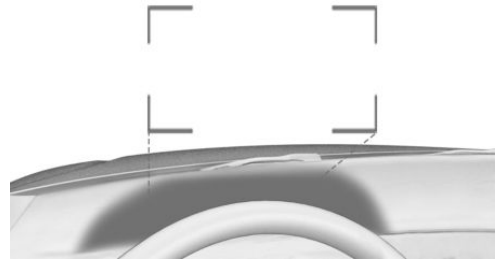
### General information

The views on the Head-up display adjust automatically depending on the selected driving mode.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the height of the Head-up display can be stored using the memory function.

Follow instructions for cleaning the Head-up display in the Vehicle Care chapter.

## Overview



Head-up display views are projected onto the windshield using protective glass. The protective glass is located between the steering wheel and windshield.

## Configuring a view

The views for the Head-up display can be set independently of the display on the instrument cluster, e.g., a reduced view.

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.  
A menu bar is displayed in the instrument cluster.
2. "HEAD-UP"  
Select the menu using the arrow buttons on the steering wheel where applicable.
3. Select the desired setting using the thumb-wheel on the steering wheel.

## Display

### Turning the Head-up display on/off

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"



## Overview

The following information is displayed on the Head-up display depending on the driving mode selected:

- ▷ Vehicle speed.
- ▷ Navigation instructions.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Tachometer.
- ▷ Selector lever display.
- ▷ Lists and messages.
- ▷ Driver assistance systems.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

## Setting the view

Additional settings can be applied depending on the driving mode selected and the Head-up display configuration.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

## Visibility of the display

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up display is influenced by the following factors:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Objects on the protective glass of the Head-up display.
- ▷ Dust or dirt on the protective glass of the Head-up display.
- ▷ Windshield dirty on inside or outside.
- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- ▷ Wet road.
- ▷ Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the basic settings checked by an authorized service center

or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Settings

Individual settings can be entered for the Head-up display, such as for the height, brightness or illustration. In addition, individual displays in the Head-up display can be set up separately such as for Driver Assistance.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

## Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

The shape and coating of the special windshield enable the system to function.

If damaged, have the special windshield replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Indicator/warning lights

### Principle

The indicator and warning lights on the instrument cluster show the status of some vehicle functions. The indicator and warning lights indicate faults in monitored systems.

### General information

The indicator and warning lights can illuminate in various combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and illuminate temporarily when drive-ready state is turned on.





## Red lights

### Seat belt reminder



Seat belt on the driver's seat is not buckled.

Additional information:

Seat belt reminder, refer to page [99](#).

### Airbag system



Warning light illuminates briefly: Indicates that the entire airbag system and seat belt tensioners are operational when drive-ready state is switched on.

Warning light illuminates continuously: There is a malfunction. Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Airbags, refer to page [159](#).

### Parking brake



The parking brake is set.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page [124](#).

### Brake system



Brake linings are worn or there is a malfunction in the brake system.



The braking assistance may not be operational. A higher pedal force may be required for braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Pedestrian Warning



Warning light illuminates: Risk of collision with a pedestrian has been

detected. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and acoustic signal sounds: Collision with a pedestrian is imminent. Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Pedestrian Warning with City Collision Mitigation, refer to page [168](#).

### Forward Collision Warning



Warning light illuminates: Risk of collision, e.g., with a vehicle, is detected. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and acoustic signal sounds: Risk of imminent collision with a vehicle is detected. Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Warning with light braking function, refer to page [167](#).

### Active Cruise Control with Distance Control



Warning light flashes and acoustic signal sounds: Brake and evade as necessary.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control, refer to page [199](#).

## Yellow lights

### Antilock Braking System



The system may not be operational.

The Antilock Braking System system is not available.



The ability to steer may be restricted during full braking.



Have checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Antilock Braking System, refer to page [180](#).

## Forward Collision Mitigation is limited or has malfunctioned



Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: Function restriction detected, e.g., due to system limits of the cameras or because the system has malfunctioned. You may continue driving. If necessary, follow the instructions from Check Control messages.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page [164](#).

## Front Collision Warning switched off



Depending on the equipment and national-market version: the system is turned off.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page [164](#).

## Dynamic Stability Control



Warning light pulsates: Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the drive and brake forces. The vehicle is stabilized.

Reduce the vehicle speed and adjust your driving style to the road conditions.

Warning light illuminates: Dynamic Stability Control has malfunctioned or is initializing. Driving stabilization is restricted or has failed.

If the warning light illuminates continuously, have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page [186](#).

## Dynamic Stability Control deactivated



The Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or the M Dynamic Mode is activated.

Additional information:

- ▶ Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page [186](#).
- ▶ M Dynamic Mode, refer to page [187](#).

## Flat tire monitor



Warning light illuminates: Flat Tire Monitor is indicating a flat tire or tire pressure loss.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Additional information:

Flat tire monitor, refer to page [277](#).

## Tire pressure monitor



Warning light illuminates: Tire Pressure Monitor is indicating a flat tire or tire pressure loss. Follow the information in the Check Control message.

Warning light flashes then illuminates continuously: Flat tires or tire pressure losses cannot be detected.

- ▶ Fault caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- ▶ In the case of tires with special approval: the tire pressure monitor was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- ▶ Wheel without wheel electronics installed: Have it checked by an authorized service



center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.

- ▶ **Malfunction:** have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Tire pressure monitor, refer to page [271](#).

## Steering system



The steering system may be faulty.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Emissions



- ▶ The warning light illuminates:

Worsening emissions, e.g., due to an incorrectly fitted fuel cap. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

- ▶ The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

Reduce the vehicle speed and have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Additional information:

Socket for OBD on-board diagnostics, refer to page [295](#).

## M Traction Control



Indicator light flashes: M Traction Control level is changed.

Additional information:

M Traction Control, refer to page [188](#).

## Green lights

### Turn signal



Turn signal is on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Additional information:

Turn signal, refer to page [127](#).

### Parking lights



Parking lights are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights, low beams, refer to page [153](#).

### Low beams



Low beams are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights, low beams, refer to page [153](#).

### Automatic High Beam Assistant



Low beams are switched on and the Automatic High Beam Assistant is activated.

High beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

Additional information:

Automatic High Beam Assistant, refer to page [155](#).

### Lane departure warning



Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version:

The indicator light illuminates: the system is switched on. At least one lane boundary has been detected on one side of the vehicle.



The system is ready to intervene and issue warnings.

Indicator light flashes: the system is performing a steering intervention.

Additional information:

Lane departure warning, refer to page [169](#).

## Automatic Hold: vehicle is held automatically



Automatic Hold is ready to use. The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page [125](#).

## Automatic Hold: vehicle secured against rolling away



The vehicle is automatically secured against rolling away after stopping.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page [125](#).

## Manual Speed Limiter



The indicator light illuminates: the system is switched on.

The indicator light flashes: the set speed limit has been exceeded.

Additional information:

Manual Speed Limiter, refer to page [194](#).

## Cruise Control



The system is active.

Additional information:

Cruise control, refer to page [196](#).

## Active Cruise Control with Distance Control



Indicator light illuminates: Vehicle has been detected ahead of you. The vehicle icon goes out if no vehicle in front is detected.

Indicator lamp is flashing: vehicle ahead is driving off.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control, refer to page [199](#).

## Speed Limit Assistant activated



Depending on vehicle equipment, the indicator light illuminates green, together with the icon for a cruise control system. Speed Limit Assistant is active and detected speed limits can be applied manually for the displayed system.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page [205](#).

## Speed Limit Assist: Apply speed limit



The detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button. As soon as the speed limit has been applied, a green checkmark is displayed.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page [205](#).

## Blue lights

### High beams



High beams have been switched on.

Additional information:

► High beams, refer to page [127](#).

► Automatic High Beam Assistant, refer to page [155](#).

## Gray lights

### Seat belt reminder



Seat belt on the passenger seat or another seat in the vehicle is not buckled.

Additional information:

Seat belts, refer to page [98](#).

### Manual Speed Limiter



The system is interrupted.

Additional information:

Manual Speed Limiter, refer to page [194](#).

### Cruise Control



The system is interrupted.

Additional information:

Cruise control, refer to page [196](#).

### Active Cruise Control with Distance Control



Indicator light is illuminated: the system is interrupted.

Indicator light flashes: Conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control, refer to page [199](#).

## White lights

### Cruise Control with Distance Control



No Distance Control displayed since the accelerator pedal is being pressed.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control, refer to page [199](#).

### M Traction Control



M Traction Control level display.

Additional information:

M Traction Control, refer to page [188](#).

## Check Control

### Principle

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of faults in the monitored systems.

### General information

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-up display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may sound and a text message may appear on the control display.

### Hiding Check Control messages

◀ An arrow icon next to the Check Control message indicates whether the Check Control message can be hidden.



To hide Check Control messages, press the left arrow button on the steering wheel.

### Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the fault is eliminated. If several faults occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

Permanently displayed Check Control messages can be hidden temporarily. These mes-



sages are automatically displayed again after approx. 8 seconds.

## Temporary display

Some Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. The Check Control messages are stored and can be displayed again later.

## Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Check Control"
5. Select the desired text message.

## Display

### Check Control



At least one Check Control message is displayed or stored.

## Text messages

Text messages in combination with an icon in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator/warning lights.

## Supplementary text messages

Additional information, such as the cause of a fault or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent text messages, the added text will be automatically displayed on the control display.

Depending on the Check Control message, further help can be selected.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"

3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Check Control"
5. Select the desired text message.
6. Select the desired setting.

## Messages after trip completion

Certain messages displayed while driving are displayed again after drive-ready state is switched off.

## Digital tachometer

### General information

The digital speedometer is permanently displayed in all driving modes. The speed currently driven is displayed.

### Adjusting the unit

Depending on the national-market version, it may be possible to set the unit for the digital tachometer.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Units"
5. "Distance"
6. Select the desired setting.

## Selection lists

### Principle

Lists can be displayed and, if necessary, used for certain functions in the instrument cluster or the Head-up display.

- ▶ Entertainment source.
- ▶ Current audio source.
- ▶ List of most recent telephone calls.

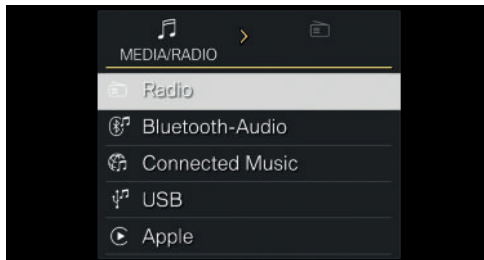
If necessary, the corresponding menu will open on the control display.

## Displaying and using the list

The selection lists can be displayed and operated using the operating elements on the steering wheel.

| Control elements                                                                 | Function                                                                                                                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Turn the knurled wheel: display the entertainment list or scroll up or down in the list.<br>Press knurled wheel: confirm selection. |
|  | Press the corresponding arrow key to change the entertainment source.                                                               |
|  | Show list of most recent telephone calls.                                                                                           |

## Display



An example:

To change the track or entertainment source after bringing up the entertainment list, use the arrow buttons on the steering wheel. Press the thumbwheel to confirm the selection.

Turn the thumbwheel up or down to select the desired entry in the list. Press the thumbwheel to confirm the selection.

Depending on the equipment version, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustration.

## Gear shift indicator

### Principle

The shift point indicator recommends the gear that best suits the current driving situation. Using the optimal gear supports an efficient driving style.

### General information

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the gear shift indicator is active in sequential mode of the M Steptronic Sport transmission and with manual transmission.

### Display

| Icon                                                                              | Description                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
|  | Shift up to the most fuel efficient gear. |

## Tachometer

### General information

The engine has a permissible speed range. Excessive speeds are indicated by a yellow prewarning field and a red warning field. The permissible speed increases as the engine oil temperature increases.

Always avoid RPM in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

### Display

The tachometer display changes depending on the selected driving mode.

## Reduced engine speed range

The available engine speed range may be reduced due certain factors such as a cold drive system. The tachometer display is automatically adjusted depending on the available engine speed range.

## Standby state and drive-ready state



OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. The drivetrain is switched off and standby state switched on.



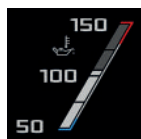
READY is displayed in the instrument cluster. The Auto Start/Stop function is ready for automatic engine start.

Additional information:

- ▶ Operating condition of the vehicle, refer to page 39.
- ▶ Auto Start/Stop function, refer to page 113.

## Engine oil temperature

### Display



- ▶ Cold engine: the bar display is in the blue temperature range.  
Drive at moderate RPM and vehicle speeds.

- ▶ Normal operating temperature: the bar display is in the middle of the temperature display.
- ▶ Hot engine: the bar display is in the upper temperature range. In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

Additional information:

Coolant level, refer to page 291.

## Indicator light in the instrument cluster



A red indicator light is displayed.

## Outside temperature

### General information

If the indicator drops to +37°F/+3°C or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

### Safety information



#### Warning

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C there is a risk of icy roads, for instance on bridges or shady sections of the road. There is a risk of accident. Modify your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.

## Shift lights

### Principle

Shift lights indicate the suitable upshift point at which optimal acceleration can be achieved.

### General information

Successive fields illuminating yellow indicate the upcoming shift point.

Shift when all fields illuminate red at the latest.

When the maximum RPM is reached, the entire display flashes red and the fuel supply is interrupted in order to protect the engine.



## Functional requirement

If the vehicle is equipped with an M Steptronic Sport transmission, sequential mode must be selected to display the shift lights.

### Shift lights in the instrument cluster

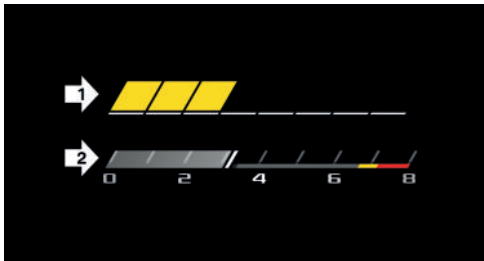


The shift lights are displayed on the instrument cluster in all driving modes.

The shift lights on the instrument cluster are only displayed if the Head-up display is disabled.

If the Head-up display is enabled, the shift lights are displayed on the Head-up display.

### Shift lights in the Head-up display



The shift lights, arrow 1, are displayed above the tachometer, arrow 2.

The shift lights are shown on the Head-up display in the following driving modes:

- ▷ "SPORT"
- ▷ Depending on vehicle equipment: "TRACK"

## Central display range

### Displayable content

The following settings are available depending on the driving mode selected:

- ▷ Reduced display.
- ▷ Trip data, refer to page [146](#).
- ▷ Navigation system route preview.
- ▷ Navigation system map view.
- ▷ M Setup, refer to page [181](#).

Information on the systems configured using the SETUP button.

- ▷ Engine data.

Information on the coolant temperature and boost pressure of the turbocharger can be displayed.

- ▷ Tire data.

Information on wheels and tires can be displayed.

- ▷ Sport displays, refer to page [150](#).
- ▷ G-Meter, refer to page [147](#).
- ▷ Entertainment.
- ▷ Android Auto®.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, select functions of a compatible smartphone can also be displayed, e.g., map views.

Some contents for the central display range can also be configured as a view in the Head-up display.

Additional information:

Head-up display, refer to page [135](#).

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page [6](#).



## Configuring the central display range

The content of the central display range on the instrument cluster can be configured individually, for instance the trip data display.

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.  
A menu bar is displayed in the instrument cluster.
2. "CONTENT"  
Select the menu using the arrow buttons on the steering wheel where applicable.
3. Select the desired setting using the thumb-wheel on the steering wheel.

- ▷  Travel time depending on the configured interval.
- ▷  Distance traveled depending on the configured interval.

## Displaying trip data continuously

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Content"
5. "Trip data"

## Display in the instrument cluster

Information on consumption and distance covered can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

## Trip data

### Principle

The trip data display provides various information about the trip, e.g., average consumption or trip distance.

### General information

The trip data can be displayed on the control display and in the instrument cluster.

Depending on the setting in the Live Vehicle menu, the trip data is shown dynamically or permanently on the control display.

The values can be displayed and reset depending on different intervals.

### Display on the control display

#### General information

The following trip data is shown on the control display:

- ▷ Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- ▷  Average fuel consumption depending on the configured interval.



- ▷ Current consumption, arrow 1.
- ▷ Average consumption, arrow 2.
- ▷ Distance traveled depending on the configured interval, arrow 3.
- ▷ Total mileage, arrow 4.

## Current consumption

The current fuel consumption display allows you to check the current fuel consumption, e.g., to drive economically and in an environmentally-friendly manner.

## Average consumption

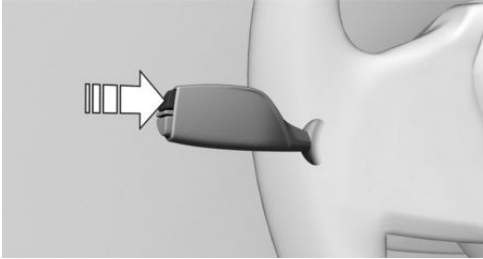
The average fuel consumption is displayed depending on how the intervals for displaying trip data are configured.

## Adjusting the display of the trip data

The intervals for the display of the trip data in the instrument cluster and on the control display are adjustable.

Using the button on the left steering column switch:

1. Press the button.  
The trip data is displayed.



2. Press button repeatedly until the desired setting is displayed.

Via iDrive:

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Time period for trip data"
5. "Values"
6. Select the desired setting:
  - ▶ "Since start of trip ( )": the values are automatically reset approx. four hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.
  - ▶ "Since last refuel ( )": the values are automatically reset after refueling with a larger quantity of fuel.
  - ▶ "Since factory": the values since the time of the factory delivery are displayed.
  - ▶ "Since Individual ( )": the values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

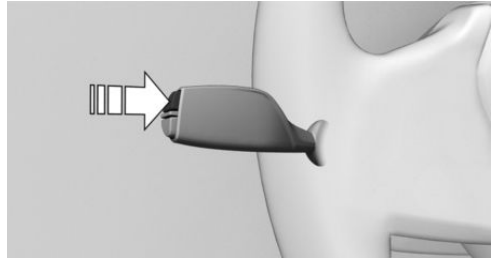
## Resetting average values manually

The following interval can be reset manually at any time:

"Since Individual ( )"

Using the button on the left steering column switch:

1. Press the button.  
The trip data is displayed.



2. Press and hold the button until the values are reset.

Via iDrive:

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Time period for trip data"
5. "Reset Individual"

The average values and counters are reset. Once the average values and counters have been reset, the following interval is automatically activated:

"Since Individual ( )"

## G-Meter

### General information

The G-Meter indicates the forces that are applied in longitudinal and transverse direction on the vehicle occupants while driving.

The display can be configured on the central display range of the instrument cluster.

The values are automatically reset whenever you start a new drive.

Additional information:

Central display area, refer to page [145](#)

## Manually resetting G-Meter values

1. Display the G-Meter on the instrument cluster.



2. Press and hold the thumbwheel on the steering wheel until the values are reset.

## Date and time

Various settings can be applied for the date and time display such as the date format.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the time zone can be set and automatic time setting can be activated. With automatic time setting, the time, date and, if necessary, the time zone are updated automatically.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. Select the desired settings.

## Fuel gauge

### Principle

The current fill level of the fuel tank is displayed.

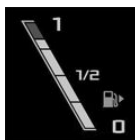
### General information

Vehicle inclination may cause the display to vary.

Additional information:

Refueling, refer to page [256](#).

### Display



An arrow beside the fuel pump icon shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

### Indicator light in the instrument cluster



The yellow indicator light illuminates, once the fuel reserve is reached.

## Range

### Principle

The range indicates the distance that can still be covered with the current tank of fuel.

### General information

The estimated range with remaining fuel is permanently displayed on the instrument cluster.

With a low remaining range, a Check Control message is briefly displayed. A low remaining range means that engine functions cannot always be ensured for sporty driving, e.g., when cornering at speed.

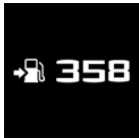
The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

## Safety information

### NOTICE

With a range below 30 miles/50 km, the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

## Display



The current range is displayed as a numerical value next to the fuel gauge.

## Setting the units of measurement

Depending on the national-market version, you can set the units of measurement for some values, for instance consumption, distances, and temperature.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Units"
5. Select the desired setting.

## Vehicle status

### General information

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems, such as for Check Control.

## Displaying vehicle status

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"

### Overview

| Icon                                                                              | Description                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | "Flat Tire Monitor": Status of the flat tire monitor, refer to page <a href="#">277</a> .         |
|  | "Tire Pressure Monitor": status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page <a href="#">271</a> . |
|  | "Engine oil level": electronic oil measurement, refer to page <a href="#">289</a> .               |
|  | "Check Control": displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page <a href="#">141</a> .    |
|  | "Required services": displaying service notifications, refer to page <a href="#">150</a> .        |

## Current driving condition

### General information

The current driving condition is displayed dynamically while driving in the Live Vehicle menu on the control display.

The following states can be displayed:

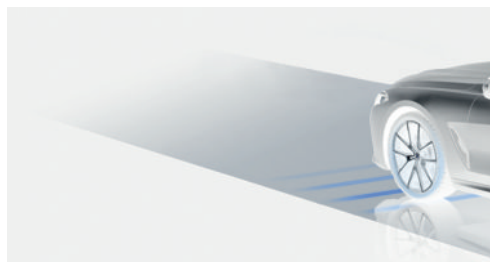
- ▷ Driving.
- ▷ "CHARGING BATTERY"

### Functional requirements

- ▷ The following driving mode is selected: "ROAD"
- ▷ The following setting is selected for Live Vehicle: "Adaptive content"



## Display



An example:

The vehicle battery is charged when the vehicle decelerates.

## Sport displays

### Principle

The Sport displays especially support a sporty driving style.

### Functional requirements

- ▶ One of the following driving modes is selected:
  - ▶ "SPORT"
  - ▶ Depending on vehicle equipment: "TRACK".
- ▶ The following setting is selected for Live Vehicle: "Adaptive content"

### Indicators on control display

The sport displays are displayed in the Live Vehicle menu on the control display.

The following information is displayed:

- ▶ Torque.
- ▶ Power.
- ▶ Boost pressure.
- ▶ Engine oil temperature.

## Display in the instrument cluster

Sport displays can be shown in the central display area of the instrument cluster. Sport displays include information on power and torque.

Additional information:

Central display area, refer to page [145](#)

## Service notifications

### Principle

The function displays the service notifications and the corresponding maintenance scopes.

### General information

After turning on, the next service appointment or the distance remaining until the next servicing is displayed briefly on the instrument cluster.

A service advisor can read out the current service notifications from the vehicle key.

### Display

More information on the type of service required may be displayed on the control display.

1. ■■ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Required services"

Maintenance work and legally mandated inspections are displayed.

5. Select the desired entry.

### Entering appointment dates

Dates for mandatory vehicle inspections can be entered.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

1. ■■ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"

3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Required services"
5. "Vehicle inspection"
6. "Date:"
7. Select the desired setting.

# Lights

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

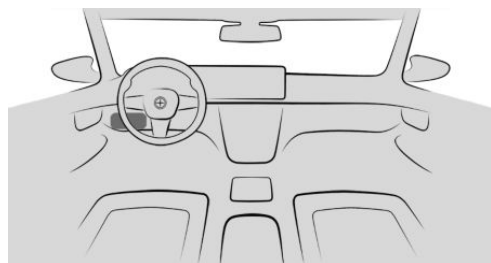
Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## Lights and lighting

### Overview

#### Buttons in the vehicle



| Icon                                                                               | Function                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Exterior lighting off.<br>Daytime driving lights.            |
|  | Parking lights.                                              |
|  | Automatic headlight control.<br>Adaptive lighting functions. |
|  | Low beams.                                                   |

| Icon                                                                              | Function                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
|  | Instrument lighting.          |
|  | Right roadside parking light. |
|  | Left roadside parking light.  |

#### Buttons on the vehicle key

| Icon                                                                              | Function                                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Interior lighting.<br>Parts of the exterior lighting. |
|  | Pathway lighting.                                     |

## Automatic headlight control

### Principle

The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for example in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

### General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be turned on.

If the low beams are switched on manually, the automatic headlight control is deactivated.

### Activate automatic headlight control

|                                                                                     |                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
|  | Press the button on the light switch. |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|



The LED in the button illuminates.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

## System limits

The automatic headlight control cannot replace your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. In these situations, turn the lights on manually.

## Parking lights, low-beams and roadside parking lights

### General information

If the driver's door is opened when the drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off after a period of time.

## Parking lights

### General information

The parking lights can only be switched on in the low speed range.

### Turning on parking lights



Press the button on the light switch.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates.

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, they might drain the vehicle battery and it would then be impossible to switch on drive-ready state.

## Turning off parking lights

The following options are available to turn off the parking lights:

- ▶  Press the button on the light switch.
- ▶ Turn on drive-ready state.

After the drive-ready state is switched on, the automatic headlight control will be activated.

## Low beams

### Turning on low beams



Press the button on the light switch.

The low beams illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates.

Press the button again to switch on the low beams when the standby state is switched on.

### Turning off low beams

Depending on the national-market version, the low beams can be turned off in the low speed range:

- ▶  Press the button on the light switch.

## Roadside parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, a one-sided roadside parking light can be switched on.

| Button                                                                              | Function                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
|  | Right roadside parking light on. |
|  | Left roadside parking light off. |



Switching off the roadside parking light:

**OFF**

Press the button on the light switch or turn on drive-ready state.

## Welcome lights

### Principle

The welcome light turns on automatically for a limited period of time when approaching or unlocking the vehicle.

### General information

Depending on the equipment, the exterior lighting of the vehicle can be set individually.

### Activating/deactivating welcome light

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. Depending on the equipment, select the following setting:
  - ▷ "Welcome and goodbye"

When unlocking the vehicle, individual lighting functions are turned on.

### Turning on the welcome light

- ▷ Automatically on approach.
- ▷ During unlocking.



- ▷ Press the button on the vehicle key with the vehicle locked.

Depending on the settings, the interior lighting and parts of the exterior lighting will be turned on.

The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

## Pathway lighting

### Principle

For the pathway lighting, the exterior lighting turns on for a certain period of time after leaving the vehicle in order to illuminate the area surrounding the vehicle.

### Switching pathway lighting on

- ▷ After switching off the drive-ready state, briefly push the turn signal lever forward.



- ▷ Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

### Setting the duration

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. "Pathway lighting"
6. Select the desired setting.

## Daytime driving lights

### General information

The daytime driving lights illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

### Activating/deactivating daytime driving lights

In some countries, daytime driving lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime driving lights in front.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Exterior lighting"

4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. Depending on vehicle equipment or national-market version:
  - ▷ "Daytime driving lights"
  - ▷ "Rear daytime driving lights"

## Adaptive lighting functions

### Principle

Adaptive lighting functions enable dynamic illumination of the road.

### General information

The adaptive lighting functions may consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment version:

- ▷ Adaptive Light Control.
- ▷ Cornering light.

### Activating the adaptive lighting functions

 Press the button on the light switch.

The LED in the button illuminates.

The adaptive lighting functions are active when the drive-ready state is switched on.

## Adaptive Light Control

### General information

Depending on the steering-wheel angle and other parameters, the light from the headlight follows the course of the road.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Light Control does not swivel to the opposite lane when the vehicle is at a standstill.

## Cornering light

### Principle

In tight curves, for instance on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional cornering light is switched on that illuminates the inside of the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

### General information

The cornering light is automatically switched on depending on the steering-wheel angle or, where applicable, the use of turn signals.

When driving in reverse, the cornering lights may be automatically switched on regardless of the steering-wheel angle.

## Adaptive headlight range control

The adaptive headlight range control feature balances out acceleration and braking processes as well as the vehicle load conditions in order to avoid blinding oncoming traffic.

## Automatic High Beam Assistant

### Principle

The Automatic High Beam Assistant detects other road users early on and automatically switches the high beams on or off depending on the traffic situation.

### General information

The Automatic High Beam Assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.



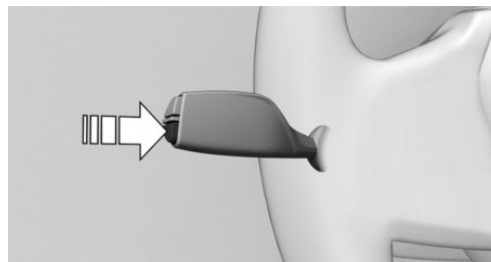
The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to ambient lighting, for instance in towns and cities.

The high beams can be switched on and off manually at any time.

### Functional requirements

- ▶ Automatic headlight control is activated.
- ▶ Low beams are switched on.

### Activating Automatic High Beam Assistant



Press the button on the turn signal lever.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

The headlights are automatically changed between low beams and high beams.



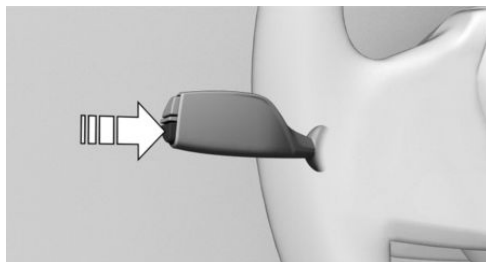
The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when the system switches on the high beams.

Interruption of the journey with activated Automatic High Beam Assistant: the Automatic High Beam Assistant remains activated when continuing the journey.

The Automatic High Beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high beams on and off.

To reactivate the Automatic High Beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

### Deactivating Automatic High Beam Assistant



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

### Sensitivity of the Automatic High Beam Assistant

#### General information

The sensitivity of the Automatic High Beam Assistant can be adjusted.

#### Safety information

##### **Warning**

If adjustments have been made or the sensitivity has been modified, oncoming traffic may be momentarily blinded. There is a risk of accident. If adjustments have been made and the sensitivity has been modified, make sure that oncoming traffic is not momentarily blinded. Switch off the high beams manually if required.

### Functional requirements

- ▶ Setting at standstill only.
- ▶ Drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▶ Light is turned off.

### Increasing sensitivity

Push the turn signal lever to the front for approximately 10 seconds.

A Check Control message is displayed. The system responds more sensitively.

## Resetting the sensitivity

Push the turn signal lever to the front again for approx. 10 seconds or switch off the drive-ready state.

The sensitivity of the Automatic High Beam Assistant is reset to the factory settings.

## System limits

The Automatic High Beam Assistant cannot replace the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. In situations that require this, therefore dim manually.

The system is not fully functional in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- ▶ In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- ▶ When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; or at animal crossings.
- ▶ In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in crossing traffic or half-observed oncoming traffic on highways.
- ▶ In poorly-lit towns and cities or in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- ▶ When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged up, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

## Instrument lighting

### Functional requirement

The brightness can only be adjusted when the parking lights or low beams are turned on.

## Setting the brightness



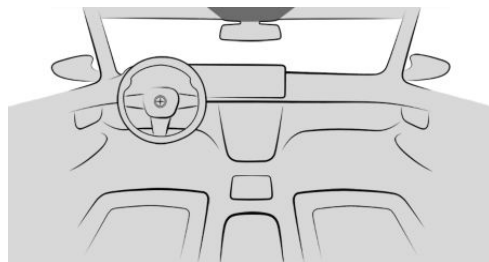
Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

## Interior lighting

### General information

Depending on the equipment version, interior lights, footwell lights, entry lights, ambient lighting, and speaker lighting are automatically controlled.

### Overview



Reading lights



Interior lights

### Turning interior lights on/off



Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button and hold for approx. 3 seconds.

The interior lights in the rear of the vehicle can be switched on and off independently. The button is located in the rear headliner.

## Turning reading lights on/off



Press the button.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the reading lights are located next to the interior lights in the front and rear.

## Ambient light

### General information

Depending on the equipment version, lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the car's interior.

### Activating/deactivating ambient light

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Ambient lighting"

### Turning ambient light on/off

The ambient light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient light was deactivated via iDrive, it will not be turned on when the vehicle is unlocked.

### Selecting the color

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Color"
6. Select the desired setting.

## Setting the brightness

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Brightness"
6. Select the desired setting.

## Dynamic light

Individual actions, for example incoming calls or opened doors, are indicated by light effects. If the ambient light is disabled, the light effects are still displayed.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Dynamic light"
6. Select the desired setting.

## Reduced for night drive

Some lights of the interior lighting are reduced when the vehicle is driven in the dark.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Reduced for night driving"

# Safety

## Vehicle features and options

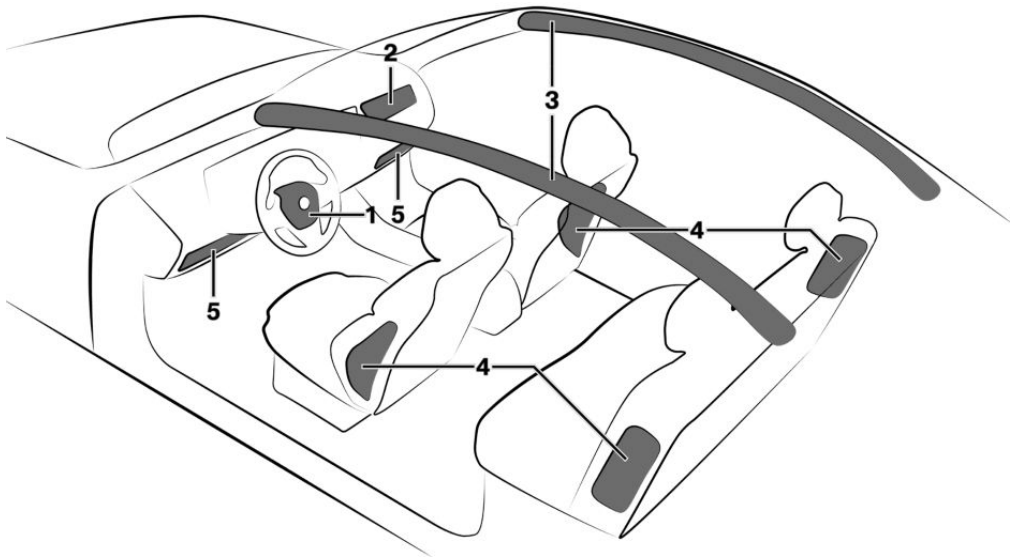
This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently

available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## Airbags



- 1 Front airbag, driver
- 2 Front airbag, front passenger
- 3 Head airbag
- 4 Side airbag
- 5 Knee airbag

### Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and the front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which seat belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

### Side airbag

In the event of a side collision, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

Depending on the national-market version:

In the event of a side collision, the side airbag in the rear protects the chest and lap area on



the side of the bodies of the occupants in the outer rear seats.

## Head airbag

In the event of a side collision, the head airbag protects the head.

## Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side collision events.

## Knee airbag

Depending on the national-market version:

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a frontal impact.

## Protective effect

### General information

Airbags are not deployed in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents.

### Information on optimum protective effect of the airbags

#### **Warning**

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to deployment. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

- ▶ Keep a distance from the airbags.
- ▶ Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions to keep the

risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is deployed.

- ▶ Adjust seat and steering wheel so that hands can be crossed over the steering wheel. Select the settings so that the shoulder rests against the backrest when crossing the hands and the upper body is as far back as possible while still maintaining a comfortable grip on the steering wheel.
- ▶ Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., with their feet and legs in the footwell, not resting on the dashboard.
- ▶ Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- ▶ There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- ▶ Dashboard and windshield on the passenger's side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive film or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for navigation devices or mobile phones.
- ▶ Do not bond the airbag cover panels with adhesive, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- ▶ Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the passenger's side as a storage area.
- ▶ Do not attach slip covers, seat cushions or other objects to the front seats that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated airbag versions.
- ▶ Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- ▶ Do not modify individual components or wiring. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- ▶ Do not disassemble the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.



The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants. Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; contact BMW Customer Relations for further information.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

## Operational readiness of the airbag system

### Safety information



#### Warning

Individual components can be hot after deployment of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.



#### Warning

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional deployment of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not deploy as intended despite the accident severity. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, disassembled, and scrapped by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Display in the instrument cluster



When drive-ready state is turned on, the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates briefly, thereby indicating the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the seat belt tensioners.

### Malfunction



- ▶ Warning light does not come on when drive-ready state is turned on.
- ▶ The warning light illuminates continuously.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Setting the front seat positions

The power that deploys the driver's/front passenger airbags depends on the position of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function, calibrate the electrical front seats as soon as a respective message appears on the control display.

Additional information:

Seats, refer to page [93](#).

## Automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags

### Principle

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

Front, knee, and side airbag on the front passenger's side are activated or deactivated.

### General information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety information and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.



## Safety information

### Warning

To ensure the front passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat surface must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the footwell.

## Functional requirements

To enable accurate recognition of the occupied seat surface:

- ▶ Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- ▶ Do not place objects under the seat that can press against the seat from below.
- ▶ Do not place any electronic devices on the front passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- ▶ No moisture in or on the seat.

## Indicator light for the front passenger airbags

The indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbag in the headliner indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbag.

The light indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

After drive-ready state is switched on, the light shortly illuminates and then indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

PASSENGER  
AIR BAG OFF 

- ▶ The indicator light illuminates when a child is properly seated in a child restraint system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the

passenger's side are not activated.

- ▶ The indicator light does not illuminate when, for instance, a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the passenger's side are activated.

## Fault of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain seat positions. In this case, the indicator light for the front passenger airbags illuminates.

In this case, change the seat position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator light goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear seat.

## Detected child restraint systems

The system generally detects children seated in a child restraint system, particularly in child restraint systems required by NHTSA at the point in time when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child restraint system, make sure that the indicator light for the front passenger airbags illuminates. This indicates that the child restraint system has been detected and the front passenger airbags are not activated.

## Collision warning systems

### General information

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle has different systems that can help prevent an imminent collision.

- ▶ Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page [164](#).
- ▶ Lane departure warning, refer to page [169](#).

- Active Blind Spot Detection, refer to page [172](#).
- Rear-end collision preparation, refer to page [174](#).

## Safety information

### **Warning**

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

### **Warning**

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

## Turning on/turning off collision warning systems

Depending on national-market version, some of the systems are automatically activated whenever you start driving.

The following functions are adjustable.

M MODE: The warning time setting cannot be changed in SPORT driving mode or, depend-

ing on vehicle equipment, in TRACK driving mode.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. Select the desired settings.

M MODE: The various driving modes affect the availability of the collision warning systems. Some collision warning systems are deactivated depending on the driving mode selected.

Additional information:

M Mode, refer to page [183](#)

## Resetting the settings

The settings of the collision warning systems can be reset to the default settings at vehicle delivery.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Reset to recommended settings"

## System limits

## Safety information

### **Warning**

Due to its limits, the system may not react, or it may react too late or in a manner that is not consistent with normal use. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.



## Detection capability

The system's detection capability is limited.

The system only takes into account objects that are located in the detection range of the installed sensors and are detected by the system.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area is monitored by cameras or radar sensors.

Thus, a system response might not come or might come late.

## System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

# Forward Collision Mitigation

## Principle

The Forward Collision Mitigation can help prevent accidents. If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps reduce the severity of the accident.

The system can issue a warning of a possible risk of collision and activate the brakes independently, if needed.

## General information

Depending on the equipment version, the Forward Collision Mitigation system includes the following functions:

- ▶ Forward Collision Warning with light braking function, refer to page 167.
- ▶ Pedestrian Warning with City Collision Mitigation, refer to page 168.

## Safety information

### Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

### Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

### Warning

Individual functions may not work correctly when towing with Front Collision Warning enabled or Cruise Control switched on. There is a risk of accident. Switch off Front Collision Warning and Cruise Control before towing.

## Sensors

Depending on the equipment, the system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▶ Camera behind the windshield.
- ▶ Front radar sensor.

Speed range

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

Some functions are deactivated earlier.

The system is enabled as soon as the speed drops below these values again.

Turning the Forward Collision Mitigation on/off

Turning on the system automatically

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active after every departure.

Turning on system manually

The system is activated by setting the warning time.

Additional information:

Setting the warning time, refer to page 165.

Turning system off manually

Depending on national-market version, the adjustment can only be made when the vehicle is at a standstill or in a very low speed range.

If necessary, the switch-off must be confirmed successively on the control display.

- 1.  Apps menu
- 2. "Vehicle apps"
- 3. "Driving settings"
- 4. "Driver Assistance"
- 5. "Safety and warnings"
- 6. "Forward Collision Mitigation"
- 7. "Off"

Setting the warning time

- 1.  Apps menu
- 2. "Vehicle apps"
- 3. "Driving settings"
- 4. "Driver Assistance"
- 5. "Safety and warnings"
- 6. "Forward Collision Mitigation"
- 7. Select the desired setting.

The more sensitive the warning time is set to be, the more warnings will be displayed. The system can therefore also issue more early or unfounded warnings and reactions.

Display in the instrument cluster

The following indicator/warning lights are shown on the instrument cluster and, depending on vehicle equipment, on the Head-up display:

| Icon                                                                                | Meaning                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version:<br><br>Function restriction detected, e.g., due to system limits of the cameras or because the system has malfunctioned. You may continue driving. If necessary, follow the instructions from Check Control messages.<br><br>System limits of the cameras, refer to page 35. |
|  | Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version:<br><br>The system is turned off.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|  | Risk of collision, for instance with a person.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|  | Risk of collision, for instance with a preceding vehicle.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |



The corresponding indicator lights and warning lights may display differently if the system detects multiple objects.

## Warning function

The Forward Collision Mitigation warns on different warning levels, depending on the respective hazardous situation.

In the event of a system warning, the driver must intervene immediately and in accordance with the situation.

- ▶ Red warning light illuminates:  
A hazardous situation has been detected. Increased awareness is required.
- ▶ Red warning light flashes:  
There is a risk of collision. Intervene immediately.
- ▶ A warning signal sounds:  
There is a risk of collision. Intervene immediately.
- ▶ Automatic brake intervention:  
Depending on the equipment and situation in case of an imminent danger of collision, the system can also intervene with an automatic brake intervention and automatically decelerate the vehicle, if necessary, to a complete stop.

When the brake pedal is depressed quickly and hard, the maximum braking force of the vehicle is used.

## Automatic brake intervention

In case of a risk of collision, the system can assist with an automatic brake intervention, if necessary.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

Manual transmission: during a brake intervention up to a complete stop, the engine may be shut down.

During automatic brake intervention, Dynamic Stability Control activates automatically.

A brake intervention can be canceled by stepping on the accelerator pedal with sufficient force, releasing the brake pedal, or by actively steering.

City brake function: the brake intervention occurs to up to approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

With radar sensor: the brake intervention occurs to up to approx. 155 mph/250 km/h.

At speeds above approx. 130 mph/210 km/h, only a brief brake intervention will occur.

## System limits

### Safety information



#### Warning

Due to its limits, the system may not react, or it may react too late or in a manner that is not consistent with normal use. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

## Detection capability

The system's detection capability is limited.

The system only takes into account objects that are located in the detection range of the installed sensors and are detected by the system.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area is monitored by cameras or radar sensors.

Thus, a system response might not come or might come late.

## System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page [35](#).

## Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ With limitation of the driving stability control systems.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after drive-ready state is switched on via the Start/Stop button.

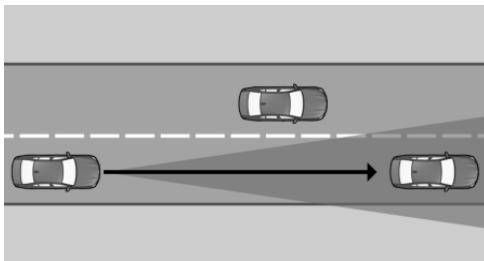
## Approach control warning with light braking function

### Principle

The Approach control warning with light braking function warns of a possible risk of collision and may brake independently.

In the event of an accident, the system helps by reducing impact speed.

### General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

The system considers the driver's vehicle handling when responding. If an active driving style is detected, warnings and brake interventions occur less frequently.

## Safety information

Follow the safety information in Chapter "Forward Collision Mitigation".

### Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning light is displayed.

| Icon                                                                              | Meaning                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
|  | Forward Collision Warning with a detected vehicle. |



Forward Collision Warning with a detected vehicle.

### Warning function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 164.

### System limits

#### General information

Follow the system limits in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

#### Detection range

The following situations may not be detected, or only detected with a delay, for instance:

- ▷ Vehicle driving slowly in front and being approached at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or strongly decelerating vehicles.
- ▷ Vehicles with unusual rear designs.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

#### Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily. As soon as the speed drops below this value again, the system is reactivated.

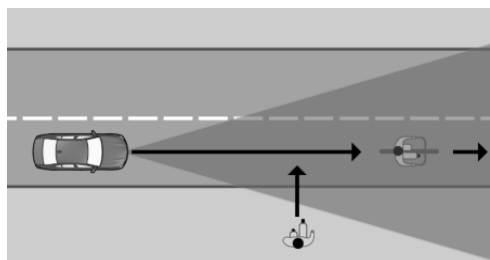
# Daytime Pedestrian Collision Mitigation

## Principle

At speeds that are common in towns and cities, the Daytime Pedestrian Collision Mitigation function warns the driver of a possible risk of collision with pedestrians and cyclists. The system may brake automatically.

In the event of an accident, the system helps by reducing impact speed.

## General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with pedestrians at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

## Safety information

Follow the safety information in Chapter "Forward Collision Mitigation".

## Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected pedestrian, a warning light is displayed.

### Icon Meaning



Risk of collision with a pedestrian.

## Warning function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene.

Additional information:

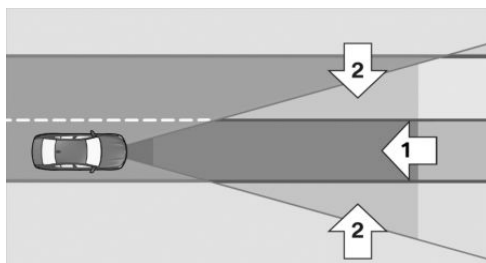
Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 164.

## System limits

### General information

Follow the system limits in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

### Detection range



The detection range in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas:

- Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- Extended area, arrows 2, to the right and left of the central area.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Partially covered pedestrians or bikes.
- Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of their contour or posture.
- Pedestrians with insufficient height.



## Upper speed limit

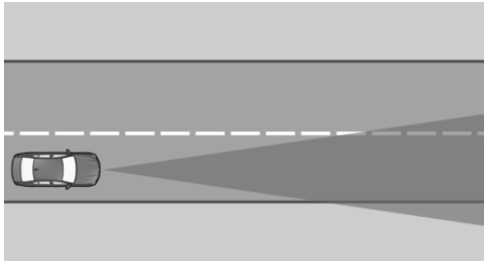
Depending on vehicle equipment, the system responds to pedestrians when the vehicle speed is below 50 mph/80 km/h.

## Lane Departure Warning

### Principle

The lane departure warning alerts when the vehicle is about to run off the road or exit the lane.

### General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning starting at a minimum speed. The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed on the control display.

Warnings are displayed in the instrument cluster. In addition, the steering wheel vibrates.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set in the respective direction before exiting the lane.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing road and traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely

and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

#### **Warning**

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

### Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane boundaries for the lane departure warning to be active.

The areas of the sensors must be clean and clear.

### Sensors

The system is controlled by a camera behind the windshield.

### Turning the Lane Departure Warning on/off

#### Turning on the system automatically

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active after every departure.

#### Turning on system manually

The system is activated by setting the warning time.

Additional information:

Setting the warning time, refer to page [170](#).

## Turning system off manually

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, you must successively confirm the switch-off on the control display.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane Departure Warning"
7. "Off"

## Setting Lane Departure Warning

### Setting the warning time

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane Departure Warning"
7. Select the desired setting.

- ▷ "Early"
- ▷ "Medium"
- ▷ "Reduced"

Some warnings are suppressed depending on the situation, for instance when purposely driving over lane markings in curves or with dynamic passing without a turn signal.

## Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"

### 6. "Vibration intensity"

#### 7. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

## Depending on the national-market version: turning steering intervention on/off

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane Departure Warning"
7. "Steering intervention"

Depending on the national-market version, the steering intervention is automatically active after every driving off.

## Display in the instrument cluster

Different system statuses are displayed on the instrument cluster, depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

| Icon                                                                               | Meaning                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Indicator light illuminates green: System is switched on. At least one lane boundary has been detected on one side of the vehicle. The system is ready to intervene and issue warnings. |
|                                                                                    | Indicator light flashes green: System is performing a steering intervention.                                                                                                            |



Indicator light illuminates green: System is switched on. At least one lane boundary has been detected on one side of the vehicle. The system is ready to intervene and issue warnings.

Indicator light flashes green: System is performing a steering intervention.

## Warning function

### If you leave the lane

If you leave the lane and if a lane boundary has been detected, the steering wheel vibrates in accordance with the steering wheel vibration setting.

When the turn signal is switched on in the corresponding direction before changing the lane, a warning is not issued.

## Steering intervention

Depending on the equipment and the national-market version: if a lane marking is crossed in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.



When steering intervention is active, the indicator light flashes green.

For instance, the steering intervention will be suppressed in the following situations:

- ▷ With hard accelerating or braking.
- ▷ When flashing.
- ▷ With hazard warning system switched on.
- ▷ In driving situation with high driving dynamics.
- ▷ While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- ▷ Immediately following a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.
- ▷ When actively merging back to your own lane after passing.

## Warning signal

Depending on the national-market version: in the event of multiple active steering interventions by the system within 3 minutes without the driver's intervention at the steering wheel during the steering intervention itself, an acoustic warning will sound. A short warning signal will sound at the second steering intervention. Beginning with the third steering intervention, a continuous warning will sound.

In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

The warning signal and Check Control message advise to pay closer attention to the lane.

## End of warning

For instance, the warning or an active steering intervention will be canceled in the following situations:

- ▷ Automatically after a few seconds.
- ▷ When returning to your own lane.
- ▷ With hard accelerating or braking.
- ▷ With hazard warning system switched on.
- ▷ When flashing.
- ▷ While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- ▷ While Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- ▷ Immediately following a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.
- ▷ With manual steering intervention.
- ▷ When another driver assistance system is activated, if applicable.
- ▷ No lane boundaries detected.
- ▷ When the system limits are reached.

## System limits

### General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

### Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▷ In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane boundaries such as in construction areas.
- ▷ With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- ▷ With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.



- ▶ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▶ Up to 10 seconds after drive-ready state is switched on via the Start/Stop button.
- ▶ While Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.

A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is limited. A yellow warning light also illuminates, depending on national-market version.

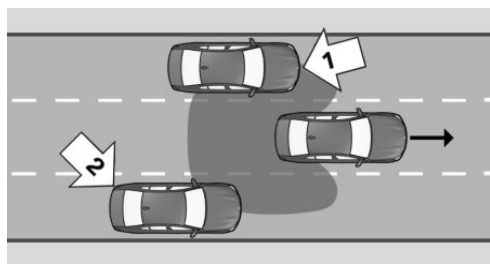
## Active Blind Spot Detection

### Principle

Active Blind Spot Detection detects vehicles in the blind spot or vehicles approaching from behind in the adjacent lane.

The warning light in the exterior mirror gives warnings at different levels.

### General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle when traveling faster than a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed in the Active Blind Spot Detection menu.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in your blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind in an adjacent lane, arrow 2. The warning light in the exterior mirror illuminates dimly.

Before you change lanes after setting the turn signal, the system issues a warning in the

situations described above. The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

When turning at a speed of up to approx. 12 mph/20 km/h, the steering wheel will not vibrate.

### Safety information

Follow the safety information in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

### Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▶ Camera behind the windshield.
- ▶ Radar sensors, side, rear.

### Functional requirement

The areas of the sensors must be clean and clear.

### Turning Active Blind Spot Detection on/off

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
7. Select the desired setting.

### Adjusting the Active Blind Spot Detection

#### Setting the warning time

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"

5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
7. Select the desired setting.

### Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"
6. "Vibration intensity"
7. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

## Warning function

### Warning light in exterior mirror



The warning light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision.

### Prewarning

The dimmed warning light in the exterior mirror indicates when vehicles are in your blind spot or approaching from the rear.

### Acute warning

When an acute warning occurs, the steering wheel vibrates briefly. The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes brightly.

An acute warning is issued if the following conditions are met:

- ▷ Another vehicle is located in the critical area.
- ▷ Your own vehicle is approaching the other lane.
- ▷ Depending on the system setting when the turn signal is turned on.

The warning stops when the other vehicle has left the critical area or the turn signal has been turned off.

### Warning light flashing

When the vehicle is unlocked, the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes for self-testing purposes.

## System limits

### General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

### Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

If the vehicle speed falls below approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is reactivated.

### Displaying warnings

Depending on the selected warning settings, e.g., warning time, more or fewer warnings can be displayed. However, there may also be an excess of unwarranted warnings of critical situations.

### Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:



- ▶ When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- ▶ In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- ▶ The bumper is dirty, iced up or covered, for instance by stickers.

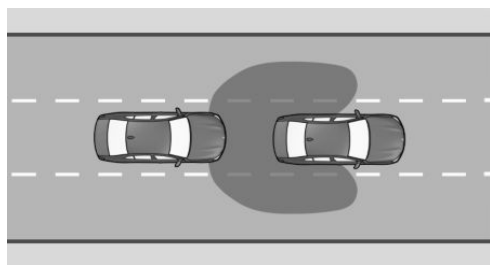
A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is limited. A yellow warning light also illuminates, depending on national-market version.

## Rear-end collision preparation

### Principle

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the rear-end collision preparation can react to vehicles approaching from behind.

### General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind the vehicle.

When a vehicle approaches from the rear at a certain speed, the system can react as follows:

- ▶ Where applicable, the hazard warning flashers will be switched on.
- ▶ Where applicable, the PreCrash functions are triggered.

### Safety information

Follow the safety information in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

## Sensors

The system is controlled by the radar sensors on the sides and rear.

### Turning rear-end collision preparation on/off

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

The system is deactivated when reversing.

### System limits

#### General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

#### Functional limitations

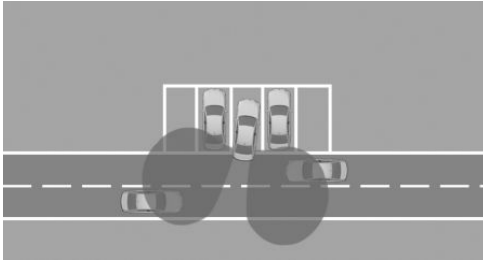
This function may be restricted if the speed of the approaching vehicle is much higher or similar to your own speed.

## Cross traffic warning

### Principle

At blind driveway exits or when driving out of perpendicular parking spaces, road users approaching from the side are detected sooner by the cross traffic warning than is possible from the driver's seat.

## General information



The area behind the vehicle is monitored by sensors.

The system indicates approaching road users.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

## Safety information



### Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

## Sensors

The system is controlled by the radar sensors on the sides at the rear.

## Activating/deactivating Cross Traffic Warning

The system must be activated on the control display for the Cross Traffic Warning to switch on automatically.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking and maneuvering"
6. "CROSS TRAFFIC WARNING"
7. Select the desired setting.

## Turning on the cross traffic warning automatically

The system must be activated on the control display. As soon as Park Distance Control or a camera view is active and a selector lever position is engaged, the system is automatically switched on.

If reverse gear is engaged, the rear system is switched on.

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active when the vehicle is started.

## Turning off the cross traffic warning automatically

The system is automatically turned off in the following situations:

- ▷ When the speed exceeds walking speed.
- ▷ When a certain distance covered is exceeded.

## Warning function

### General information

The control display shows the corresponding view, an acoustic signal may sound as necessary, and the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes.



In case of a brake intervention, a message is displayed on the control display and close after a brief period of time.

## Visual warning

### Warning light in exterior mirror



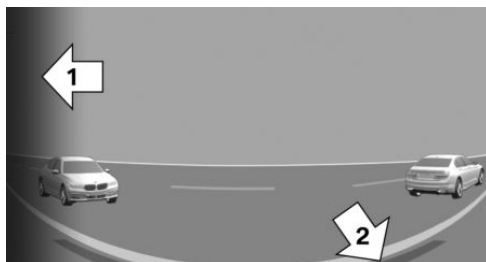
The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes if the rear sensors detect other vehicles when the vehicle is reversing.

### Display in the Park Distance Control view



In the Park Distance Control view, the respective boundary area flashes red if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

### Depending on vehicle equipment: display in camera image



The respective boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera image flashes red if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, mark the bumper of your own vehicle.

## Acoustic warning

In addition to the visual warning, a signal tone sounds if your own vehicle moves into the respective direction.

Depending on the national-market version, the signal tone will already sound when the gear position is engaged.

## System limits

### System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page [35](#).

### Functional limitations

The function can be limited, for instance in the following situations:

- ▶ In tight curves.
- ▶ Crossing objects are moving at a very slow or a very fast speed.
- ▶ Other objects that hide cross traffic are in the capture range of the sensors.



## Active Protection

### Principle

Active Protection prepares occupants and the vehicle for a possible accident in critical driving or collision situations.

### General information

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, Active Protection consists of various PreCrash functions.

The system is used to detect certain critical driving situations that might lead to an accident. This includes the following critical driving situations:

- ▶ Emergency braking.
- ▶ Severe understeering.
- ▶ Severe oversteering.

Certain functions of several systems can, within the system limits, lead to Active Protection triggering:

- ▶ Forward Collision Warning with light braking function: automatic brake intervention.
- ▶ Forward Collision Warning with light braking function: brake booster.
- ▶ Rear-end collision preparation: detection of impending rear-end collisions.

### Safety information



#### Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, critical situations might not be detected reliably or in time. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

### Function

Depending on the equipment and requirements, the following individual functions are active in accident-critical driving situations:

- ▶ Automatic closing of the windows.  
The windows remain open with a small gap.
- ▶ The glass sunroof/panoramic glass sunroof closes automatically.  
The sun protection is also closed.
- ▶ Automatic positioning of the backrest for the front passenger seat.

Systems can be returned to the desired settings following a critical driving situation without accident.

## PostCrash – iBrake

### Principle

In certain accident situations, the PostCrash – iBrake can automatically bring the vehicle to a standstill without intervention by the driver.

### General information

The PostCrash – iBrake can reduce the risk of a further collision and its consequences.

### At standstill

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

### Harder vehicle deceleration

In certain situations, it may be necessary to bring the vehicle to a halt more quickly than automatic braking allows.

To do this, quickly apply extra force to the brake. For a brief period, the brake pressure will be higher than the brake pressure that is achieved by the automatic braking function. Automatic braking is interrupted.



## Abort automatic braking

It may be necessary to interrupt automatic braking in certain situations, for instance when making an evasive maneuver.

Abort automatic braking:

- ▷ By pressing the brake pedal.
- ▷ By pressing the accelerator pedal.

## Fatigue alert

### Principle

The Fatigue Alert can detect decreasing alertness or fatigue of the driver during long, monotonous trips, for instance on highways. The system recommends a break.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

### Function

The system is switched on each time drive-ready state is switched on.

After starting the trip, the system is trained to the driver, so that decreasing alertness or fatigue can be detected.

This procedure takes, for example, the following criteria into account:

- ▷ Personal driving style, for instance steering behavior.
- ▷ Driving conditions, for instance time, length of trip.

The system is active starting at approx. 43 mph/70 km/h and can also display a break recommendation.

## Break recommendation

### Setting break recommendation

The break recommendation can be switched on or off and adjusted via iDrive.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Fatigue Alert"
7. Select the desired setting.

### Display

If the driver becomes less alert or fatigued, a message is displayed in the control display with the recommendation to take a break.

During the display, various settings can be selected.

The system is reset approx. 45 minutes after parking the vehicle. A break recommendation can only be displayed again after this time has elapsed.

## System limits

System functionality may be limited. If the function is limited, either no warning is issued or an incorrect warning is issued. The system function may be limited in the following situations, e.g.:

- ▷ If the time is set incorrectly.
- ▷ At a predominantly driven speed below approx. 43 mph/70 km/h.
- ▷ With a sporty driving style, such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
- ▷ In active driving situations, such as when changing lanes frequently.

- ▷ When the road condition is poor.
- ▷ In the event of strong side winds.



# Driving stability control systems

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## Antilock Braking System

### Principle

The Antilock Braking System prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle maintains its steerability even during emergency braking, which increases the active driving safety.

### General information

The Antilock Braking System is ready after each time drive-ready state is turned on.

### Malfunction



The warning light on the instrument cluster illuminates.



A Check Control message is displayed.

- ▶ The Antilock Braking System system is not available.
- ▶ The ability to steer is restricted during full braking.

Have checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Brake assistant

The brake assistant automatically applies maximum braking assistance when the brake pedal is depressed quickly. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during emergency braking. The advantages of the Antilock Braking System are thereby utilized.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal during full braking.

## Drive-off assistant

### Principle

The drive-off assistant supports driving off on uphill grades.

### Driving off

1. Hold the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal.
2. Release the brake pedal and drive off quickly.

After the brake pedal is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle loading, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

In order to prevent rolling back when driving off, use the parking brake.



1. Pull and release switch before driving off.

The parking brake is set.

2. Step on the accelerator pedal sufficiently to drive off.

## M Setup

### Principle

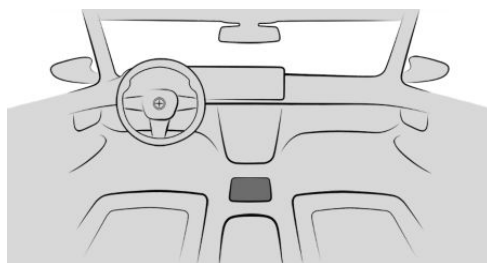
The SETUP button is used to configure various driving dynamics and drive systems.

### General information

When the drive-ready state is switched on after the idle state, an efficient vehicle condition is active by default.

### Overview

#### Button in the center console



#### Buttons on the steering wheel

| Button                                                                             | Function         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
|  | M1 configuration |
|  | M2 configuration |

## Settings

| Icon                                                                              | System                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | "Engine": M Engine Dynamics Control modes, refer to page <a href="#">131</a> .                                                          |
|  | Manual transmission:<br>"Gear Shift Assistant": RPM change at gear change.<br>Gear Shift Assistant, refer to page <a href="#">116</a> . |
|  | "Chassis": programs of Adaptive M suspension, refer to page <a href="#">222</a> .                                                       |
|  | "Steering": programs of Servotronic, refer to page <a href="#">184</a> .                                                                |
|  | "Brake": programs of brake, refer to page <a href="#">185</a> .                                                                         |
|  | "M Traction Control": M Traction Control, refer to page <a href="#">188</a> .                                                           |

The following systems can also be configured for M1/M2:

| Icon                                                                                | System                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | "Auto Start/Stop": Auto Start/Stop function, refer to page <a href="#">113</a> .                                                          |
|  | M Steptronic Sport transmission:<br>"Drivelogic": shift modes and Drivelogic programs.<br>Drivelogic, refer to page <a href="#">121</a> . |
|  | "DSC": Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page <a href="#">186</a> , and M Dynamic Mode, refer to page <a href="#">187</a> .             |
|  | "M Sound": Sound Control, refer to page <a href="#">132</a> .                                                                             |



## Operation via SETUP

### General information

The settings from the SETUP button are applied directly. The settings are not saved.

### Configuring M Setup

1.  Press the button.
2. Select the desired setting.

## Operation via M1/M2

### General information

The settings for the driving dynamics and drive systems can be saved using the M1/M2 buttons and retrieved if required.

When M1 or M2 is active, any changes to the setting are immediately applied.

When M1/M2 is deactivated or reset, the driving dynamics and drive systems are reset to their default settings.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Depending on the setting, Dynamic Stability Control may not be available or only available to a limited extent when the M1 or M2 button is activated. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Note the settings for Dynamic Stability Control in iDrive and take any necessary action. Modify your driving style and react, if necessary.

### Configuring M1/M2

1.  Press the button.
2. "M1 CONFIGURATION" or "M2 CONFIGURATION"
3. Select the desired setting.

The individual settings are stored for the configuration currently in use.

Alternatively, current system settings can be transferred to M1 or M2. To do this, press and hold the desired button on the steering wheel until an acoustic signal sounds.

### Activating M1/M2

Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

- ▷  Activate M1.
- ▷  Activate M2.

"M1 CONFIGURATION" or "M2 CONFIGURATION": If DSC OFF or M Dynamic Mode is set, a message is displayed on the instrument cluster. This message is confirmed by pressing the button again.

### Disabling M1/M2

Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.

### Resetting M1/M2

1.  Press the button.
  2. "M1 CONFIGURATION" or "M2 CONFIGURATION"
  3. "Reset"
  4. "Reset M1 settings."
- To cancel resetting: "Cancel"

## Display in the instrument cluster

| Icon                                                                             | Description                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Icon illuminates: corresponding configuration is activated.                                                                                 |
|  |                                                                                                                                             |
|  | Icon illuminates and "Function cannot currently be activated." appears: Configuration cannot be activated due to current driving situation. |
|  | Reactivate configuration when the lettering is not illuminated.                                                                             |

## M MODE

### Principle

Driver assistance and collision warning systems can be adapted to the situation via M MODE.

The display on the instrument cluster and the Head-up display view change with the selected driving mode.

### General information

The following driving modes are available:

- ▷ "ROAD"
- ▷ "SPORT"
- ▷ Depending on the equipment: "TRACK"

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic con-

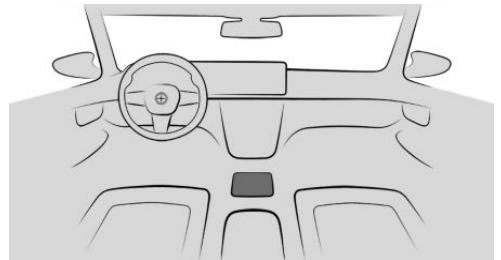
ditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

#### **Warning**

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



## Driving modes

### ROAD drive mode

- ▷ All available collision warning systems are switched on.
- ▷ All available driver assistance systems are active.

ROAD drive mode is activated after drive-ready state is switched on.



## SPORT drive mode

Depending on the equipment, the following systems are deactivated:

- ▶ Lane departure warning.
- ▶ Side collision mitigation.
- ▶ Manual Speed Limiter.
- ▶ Cruise control.
- ▶ Active Cruise Control with Distance Control.

The vehicle automatically switches to ROAD driving mode when you activate certain systems.

## Depending on vehicle equipment: TRACK driving mode

In addition to the deactivated systems in SPORT drive mode, the following systems are deactivated, depending on vehicle equipment:

- ▶ Speed Limit Info with no-passing indicator.
- ▶ Forward Collision Warning.
- ▶ Active Blind Spot Detection.
- ▶ Rear-end collision preparation.
- ▶ Hazard flashing with hard braking right before standstill is deactivated.
- ▶ Control display is switched off.
- ▶ The functions of the entertainment system are switched off.

## Selecting the driving mode

ROAD and SPORT drive modes can only be enabled when drive-ready state is switched on.

Depending on national-market version, TRACK drive mode can only be enabled when the vehicle is stationary or at very low speed.

1.  Press the button.
2. Select the desired setting.

In addition, the collision warning systems can be adjusted.

Additional information:

Collision warning systems, refer to page 164.

## Display

The display changes according to the drive mode selected. The view can be configured individually.

## Servotronic

### Principle

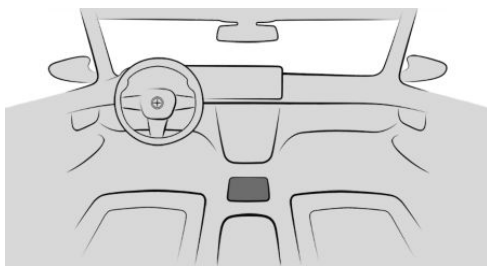
Servotronic is a speed-dependent power steering function.

The system provides the steering force with more support at low speeds than at higher ones. This makes it easier to park, for instance, and makes steering firmer when driving at faster speeds.

Furthermore, the steering force adapts to the driving mode to convey a firm, sporty feel or a comfortable steering response.

### Overview

#### Button in the vehicle



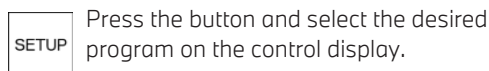


## Programs

| Program   | Steering force tuning                           |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------|
| "COMFORT" | Low steering forces, good roadway feedback.     |
| "SPORT"   | High steering forces, maximum roadway feedback. |

## Selecting a program

### Using the button



### Via iDrive

Servotronic settings can be configured in M Setup.

Additional information:

M Setup, refer to page [181](#).

## Display in the instrument cluster



When the display for M Setup is activated in the instrument cluster, the selected program is displayed.

Additional information:

Central display area, refer to page [145](#)

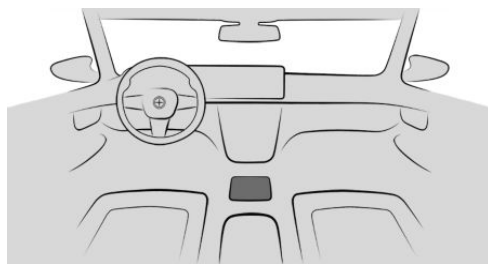
## Brake

### Principle

The sensitivity of the brake pedal motions to the braking response can be adjusted.

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle

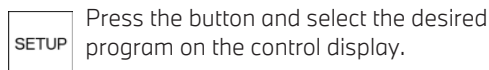


## Programs

| Program   | Response characteristics |
|-----------|--------------------------|
| "COMFORT" | Comfortable braking.     |
| "SPORT"   | Sensitive braking.       |

## Selecting a program

### Using the button



### Via iDrive

Brake settings can be configured in M Setup.

Additional information:

M Setup, refer to page [181](#).

## Display in the instrument cluster



When the display for M Setup is activated in the instrument cluster, the selected program is displayed.

Additional information:

Central display area, refer to page [145](#)



## Dynamic Stability Control

### Principle

Dynamic Stability Control helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing drive power and by brake interventions on individual wheels.

### General information

The system detects the following unstable driving conditions, for instance:

- ▶ Skidding, which can lead to oversteering.
- ▶ Loss of adhesion of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

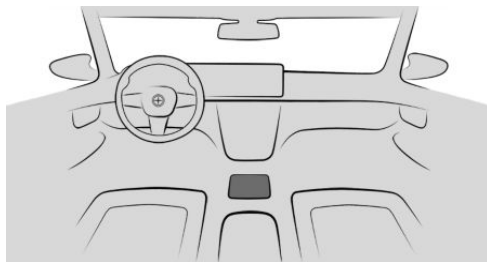
The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

#### **Warning**

When driving with a roof load, e.g., roof bars, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher. This increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Drive with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

### Overview

#### Button in the vehicle



Dynamic Stability Control

### Activating/deactivating Dynamic Stability Control

#### General information

Dynamic Stability Control is automatically activated whenever drive-ready state is switched on.

When Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated, driving stability is reduced while accelerating and when cornering.

To support driving stability, reactivate Dynamic Stability Control as soon as possible.

#### Activating/deactivating the system

-  Press the button to open the selection.
- "DSC OFF"  
Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
-  Press the button again to reactivate Dynamic Stability Control.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following programs can be displayed and selected immediately after disabling Dynamic Stability Control:

- ▷ M Traction Control, refer to page 188.
- ▷ M Drift Analyzer, refer to page 190.

Dynamic Stability Control settings can be configured in M Setup.

Additional information:

M Setup, refer to page 181.

## Displays in the instrument cluster



View when Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.



Indicator light illuminates: Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.



Warning light pulsates: Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the drive and brake power. The vehicle is stabilized.

Reduce speed and modify your driving style to the driving circumstances.



Warning light illuminates: Dynamic Stability Control has failed or is initializing. Driving stabilization is restricted or has failed.

If the warning light illuminates continuously, have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Automatic program change

Dynamic Stability Control can be activated automatically by Front Collision Mitigation depending on the situation. Deactivate Forward Collision Mitigation as necessary.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 164.

## M Dynamic Mode

### Principle

M Dynamic Mode allows a ride with high longitudinal and lateral acceleration but with limited driving stability.

Only in the absolute limit range does the system intervene for stabilization by reducing the engine power and by brake interventions on the wheels. In this driving condition, additional steering corrections may be necessary.

### General information

You may find it useful to briefly activate the system under the following special circumstances:

- ▷ When rocking the vehicle free from deep snow or driving off from loose ground.
- ▷ With an increased need for dynamics or longitudinal acceleration, for instance when driving on a race track.

To support driving stability, reactivate Dynamic Stability Control.

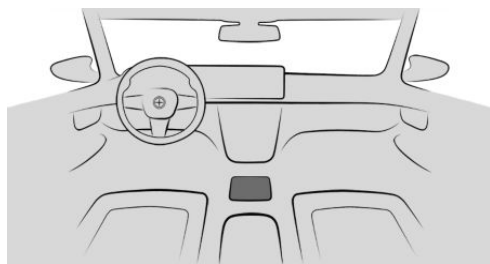
### Safety information

#### **Warning**

When M Dynamic Mode is activated, stabilizing interventions are carried out only to a reduced extent. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



Dynamic Stability Control

### Activate/deactivate the function

#### Using the button

1.  Press the button to open the selection.
2. "MDM"  
M Dynamic Mode is activated.
3.  Press the button again to reactivate Dynamic Stability Control.

#### Via iDrive

M Dynamic Mode settings can be configured in M Setup.

Additional information:

M Setup, refer to page [181](#).

## Display in the instrument cluster

| Icon                                                                              | Description                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Display active and warning light illuminates:<br>M Dynamic Mode is activated.                                         |
|  |                                                                                                                       |
|  | Dynamic Stability Control warning light also flashes:<br>M Dynamic Mode controls the drive forces and braking forces. |
|  | Indicator and warning lights illuminate:                                                                              |
|  | The M Dynamic Mode or the Dynamic Stability Control has malfunctioned.                                                |

## M Traction Control

### Principle

M Traction Control permits the gradual adjustment of the wheel-slip behavior of the rear wheels during acceleration by regulating the driving power accordingly.

### General information

If the Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated after an idle state, the M Traction Control level OFF/Level 0 is set.

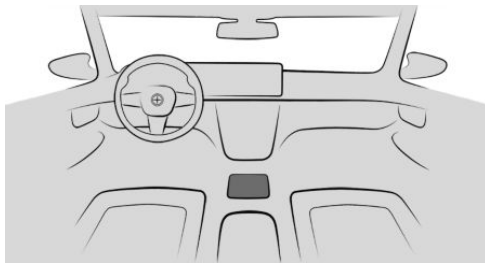
## Safety information

### **Warning**

The deactivation of the Dynamic Stability Control DSC limits the driving stability. Depending on the selected setting of the M Traction Control, the minor or major wheel-spin is possible, which limits the tracking, e.g., while accelerating. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



## Functional requirement

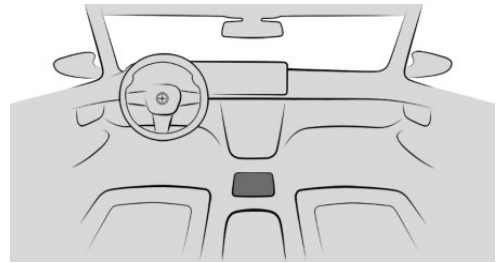
Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

Additional information:

Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page [186](#).

## Selecting settings

### Using the button



1.  Press the button.
2. "M Traction Control"
3. Select the desired setting:
  - ▶ OFF/Level 0: support switched off. Wheels may spin strongly with severe oversteering.
  - ▶ Level 10: maximum support. Wheels may spin slightly with slight oversteering.

### Via iDrive

M Traction Control settings can be configured in M Setup.

Additional information:

M Setup, refer to page [181](#).

## Displays in the instrument cluster

| Icon                                                                             | Description                                                                                             |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Display is active and indicator light illuminates:<br>The Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.     |
|  |                                                                                                         |
|  | Dynamic Stability Control warning light also flashes: M Traction Control is regulating the drive power. |
|  | M Traction Control level display.                                                                       |
|  | Indicator light flashes: M Traction Control level is changed.                                           |

## M Drift Analyzer

### Principle

The M Drift Analyzer detects and evaluates when the vehicle is moved in the drift.

### General information

For safety reasons, the use of the M Drift Analyzer is only permitted outside of public road traffic and under suitable ambient conditions.

Higher mechanical and thermal loads while drifting lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty. Check the tire condition and the tire tread depth before driving off.

The data can be recorded as individual drifts or as total distance in a drift session.

M Traction Control assists the driver depending on the setting.

Additional information:

M Traction Control, refer to page [188](#).

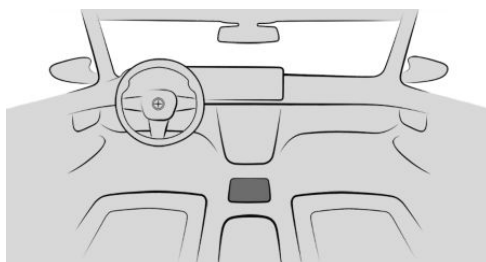
## Safety information

### **Warning**

The deactivation of the Dynamic Stability Control DSC limits the driving stability. Depending on the selected setting of the M Traction Control, the minor or major wheel-spin is possible, which limits the tracking, e.g., while accelerating. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



Dynamic Stability Control

## Activating/deactivating the system

### General information

Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated when the M Drift Analyzer is activated.

The system detects independently when a single drift starts and ends.

Deactivating M Drift Analyzer activates Stability Control and 4WD mode.

## Using the button



1.  Press the button.
2. "DSC OFF"
3. "M Drift Analyzer"
4. "Activate"
5. Confirm message.

## Via iDrive

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "M Drift Analyzer"
4. "Activate"
5. If necessary, "Activate anyway"

## Set the M Traction Control level

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "M Drift Analyzer"
4. "M Traction Control"
5. Select the desired setting.

## Displays

### Indications on the control display

The following information is shown on the control display:

- Values from the last and best drift.
- Drift angle performance values.

### Displays in the instrument cluster

The following icons are shown on the instrument cluster and, depending on vehicle equipment, on the Head-up display:

| Icon                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Assessment of the current drift.<br>The number of stars that can be reached varies depending on the selected M Traction Control level.<br>The better the drift, the more stars are filled out. |
|  | Current drift is the best drift.                                                                                                                                                               |
|  | M Drift Analyzer is activated.                                                                                                                                                                 |
|  | For an optimal drift, apply the accelerator pedal less.                                                                                                                                        |

## Reset the data

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "M Drift Analyzer"
4. "Reset"

## Active M differential

The active M differential provides for continuously variable locking of the rear axle differential depending on the driving situation. This prevents an individual rear wheel from spinning even when the Dynamic Stability Control is turned off and in M Dynamic Mode, and thus enables optimum traction in all driving situations.

The driver is responsible adapting his or her driving style to the situation.



# Driver assistance systems

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## Speed warning

### Principle

The speed warning can be used to set a speed limit. A warning will be issued when this speed limit is exceeded.

### General information

Another warning occurs when the set speed limit is exceeded again after it has dropped by 3 mph/5 km/h.

### Activating/deactivating the speed warning

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Speed warning"

### Adjusting the speed

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"

6. "Speed warning"
7. "Warning above:"
8. Select the desired setting.

### Applying current speed as the speed warning

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Speed warning"
7. "Adopt current speed"

## Speed Limit Info

### Speed Limit Info

#### Principle

Speed Limit Info shows the currently valid speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if necessary, the Head-up display.

#### General information

The camera in the area of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as overhead sign posts.

Traffic signs with extra icons are considered and compared with the vehicle's onboard data. The traffic sign will then be either displayed or ignored depending on the situation in the instrument cluster and the Head-up display.

The system may also show speed limits that apply to routes that are not signposted if the navigation system has current map data.



For Speed Limit Info to function correctly, current map data for the country in which the vehicle is operated must be downloaded.

For information on the current map version and map updates, see Map update in the Navigation system chapter.

Additional information:

- ▶ Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.

## Safety information

### **Warning**

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

## Sensors

The system is controlled by a camera behind the windshield.

## Displaying Speed Limit Info

### General information

The Speed Limit Info can be shown or hidden via iDrive in the instrument cluster. Depending on the national-market version, Speed Limit Info is continuously displayed in the instrument cluster.

### Displaying Speed Limit Info

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"

4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Limit Assistance"
7. "Speed limits"
8. "Show current limit"

## Display

### Speed Limit Info

| Icon                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Current speed limit.<br>Depending on the national-market version, it is possible to switch between the units of measurement. |
|  |                                                                                                                              |
|  | No data on current speed limit available.                                                                                    |
|  | Speed Limit Info not available.                                                                                              |

If the detected speed limit has been exceeded, the display will flash. Depending on national-market version, an acoustic signal also sounds. The warning for exceeding the maximum permissible speed can be activated or deactivated via iDrive:

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Limit Assistant"
7. "Warning when speeding"

## Settings

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"

3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Limit Assistance"
7. Select the desired setting.

## System limits

### System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▶ Camera, refer to page 35.

### Functional limitations

The system function may be limited and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- ▶ Traffic signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers, or paint.
- ▶ Traffic signs do not comply with the standard.
- ▶ In areas that are not included in the navigation system map data.
- ▶ If navigation system map data is invalid, outdated, or unavailable.
- ▶ When roads deviate from the navigation, such as due to changes in road layout.
- ▶ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▶ When passing buses or trucks with traffic signs applied to them.
- ▶ In case of electronic traffic signs.
- ▶ When traffic signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.
- ▶ In the presence of country-specific road signs or road layouts.

## Manual Speed Limiter

### Principle

The Manual Speed Limiter can be used to set a speed limit, for instance to prevent the vehicle from exceeding speed limits.

### General information

The system can limit the speed, starting at 20 mph/30 km/h. The vehicle can be driven at any speed below the set speed limit.

### Overview

#### Buttons on the steering wheel

| Button                                                                            | Function                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | System on/off.                                                                  |
|  | Store current speed.<br>Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually. |
|  | Rocker switch:<br>Changing the speed limit.                                     |

### Operation

#### Turning on the speed limiter

-  Press the button on the steering wheel.

The current speed is adopted as the speed limit.

If the system is turned on while the vehicle is stationary or driving at low speeds, 20 mph/30 km/h is set as the speed limit.

The marking in the speedometer is set to the corresponding speed.

When the speed limit is activated, Dynamic Stability Control is switched on as necessary.

## Turning off the speed limiter



Press the button on the steering wheel.

The system switches off automatically in the following situations, for example:

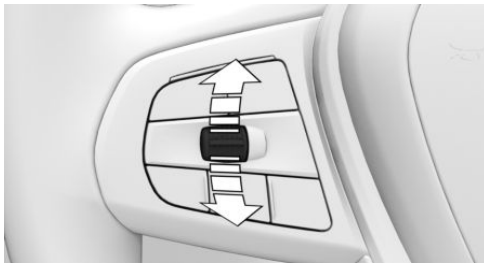
- ▶ When the engine is switched off.
- ▶ When Cruise Control is switched on.
- ▶ When activating certain driving modes.

The displays turn off.

## Stopping the speed limiter

If the reverse gear is engaged or in Neutral, the system is interrupted when rolling backwards.

## Changing the speed limit



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed limit is set.

- ▶ Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the speed limit increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▶ Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

If the set speed limit is reached or unintentionally exceeded, such as when driving downhill, the vehicle is not actively braked.

When the speed limit is set during a trip to a value below the current speed, the vehicle coasts until it drops to the set speed limit.

The current speed can also be stored by pressing a button:

SET

Press the button on the steering wheel.

## Exceeding the speed limit

When the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit, a warning is issued.

The speed limit can be exceeded intentionally.

Press the accelerator pedal all the way down to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, the limit is automatically reactivated.

## Warning when the speed limit is exceeded

### Visual warning



If the speed limit is exceeded: the indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes while the vehicle speed is greater than the set speed limit.

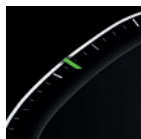
### Acoustic warning

- ▶ If the speed limit is exceeded unintentionally, a signal sounds.
- ▶ When the speed limit is reduced to below the current vehicle speed, the signal sounds after some time.
- ▶ When the speed limit is intentionally exceeded by stepping on the accelerator pedal all the way down, there is no signal.

## Displays in the instrument cluster

### Display in the speedometer

Depending on the equipment, a mark in the speedometer displays the status of the system.



- ▷ Green marking: system is active.
- ▷ Gray marking: system is interrupted.
- ▷ No marking: system is switched off.

## Indicator light

| Icon                                                                             | Description                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | The indicator light illuminates: the system is switched on.<br>The indicator light flashes: the set speed limit has been exceeded. |
|  | Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.                                                                             |



## Cruise Control without Distance Control

### Principle

With the Cruise Control, a set speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the set speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

### General information

The system can be activated starting at 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the vehicle settings, the cruise control settings may change under certain conditions.

## Safety information

### Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

### Warning

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:

- ▷ On winding roads.
- ▷ With high traffic volume.
- ▷ On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.

There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.

### Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

**Warning**

Individual functions may not work correctly when towing with Front Collision Warning enabled or Cruise Control switched on. There is a risk of accident. Switch off Front Collision Warning and Cruise Control before towing.

## Overview

## Buttons on the steering wheel

**Button Function**

Cruise control on/off.



RESUME

Continue cruise control with the last setting.



CANCEL

Interrupt cruise control.



SET

Store current speed.  
Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.



Rocker switch:  
Set speed.

## Turning Cruise Control on/off

## Turning on the system



Depending on the equipment version, press the relevant button on the steering wheel.



The indicator lights in the instrument cluster illuminate and the mark on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

## Turning off the system



Depending on the equipment version, press the relevant button on the steering wheel.



The displays turn off. The stored set speed is deleted.

## Interrupting Cruise Control

## Stopping the system manually



When active, press the button.

## Stopping the system automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ When braking manually.
- ▷ Manual transmission:  
The clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds or released if a gear is not engaged.  
The gear engaged is too high for the current speed.
- ▷ M Steptronic Sport transmission: selector lever position D is disengaged.
- ▷ While M Dynamic Mode is enabled or Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- ▷ While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.

## Adjusting the speed

### Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the set speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.

**SET** Press the button.

### Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is tapped to the resistance point, the set speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h. The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.
- ▷ Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it: vehicle accelerates or decelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal.

After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

### Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unwanted vehicle deceleration or acceleration may occur.

**RESUME** Press the button with the system interrupted.

Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- ▷ When the system is switched off.
- ▷ When drive-ready state is switched off.

### Displays in the instrument cluster

#### Display in the speedometer

Depending on the equipment, a mark in the speedometer displays the status of the system.



- ▶ Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- ▶ Gray marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.

- ▶ No marking: system is switched off.

## Indicator light

| Icon                                                                             | Description                                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
|  | No indicator light: system is switched off.            |
|  | Indicator light green: system is active.               |
|  | Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted. |

## Displays in the Head-up display

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up display.



The icon is displayed when the set speed is reached.

## Active Cruise Control with Distance Control

### Principle

Using the Cruise Control, a desired speed and a distance to a vehicle ahead can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel.

### General information

The system maintains the set speed on clear roads. The vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of the vehicle so that the set

distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained. The speed is adjusted as far as the given situation allows.

The distance can be adjusted at several levels. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a standstill and then drives off again within a brief period, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits.

Otherwise, drive off on your own, such as by pressing the accelerator pedal or the rocker switch on the steering wheel.

Depending on the vehicle settings, the cruise control settings may change under certain conditions.

## Safety information

### Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

### Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

### **Warning**

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

### **Warning**

Risk of accident is greater when there is a high speed differential to other vehicles, for instance in the following situations:

- ▷ When approaching a slowly moving vehicle at speed.
- ▷ Vehicle suddenly swerving into own lane.
- ▷ When approaching stationary vehicles at speed.

There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

### **Warning**

Individual functions may not work correctly when towing with Front Collision Warning enabled or Cruise Control switched on. There is a risk of accident. Switch off Front Collision Warning and Cruise Control before towing.

## Overview

### Buttons on the steering wheel

| Button                                                                            | Function                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Cruise control on/off.                                                          |
|  | Store current speed.<br>Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually. |
|  | Continue cruise control with the last setting.                                  |
|  | Interrupt cruise control.                                                       |
|  | Increase the distance.<br>Switch Distance Control on/off.                       |
|  | Reduce distance.<br>Switch Distance Control on/off.                             |
|  | Rocker switch:<br>Set speed.                                                    |

## Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Cameras behind the windshield.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page [35](#).

## Application range

The system is best used on well-maintained roads.

The minimum speed that can be set is 20 mph/30 km/h.



The maximum speed that can be set is limited and depends, for example, on the vehicle and the vehicle equipment.

The system can also be activated when stationary.

## Turning Cruise Control on/off or stopping it

### Turning on the system



Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster illuminate and the mark on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

### Turning off the system

To switch off the system while stationary, step on brake pedal at the same time.



Press the button on the steering wheel.

The displays turn off. The stored set speed is deleted.

### Stopping the system manually



When enabled, press the button on the steering wheel.

If interrupting the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

### Stopping the system automatically

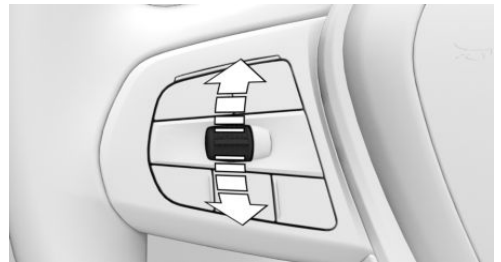
The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- ▶ When braking manually.
- ▶ Selector lever position D is disengaged.

- ▶ While M Dynamic Mode is enabled or Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- ▶ While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- ▶ When the vehicle is stationary, the seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is opened.
- ▶ The system has not detected objects for an extended period, for instance on a road with very little traffic without curb or shoulder markings.
- ▶ The detection range of the radar is impaired, for instance by contamination or heavy precipitation.
- ▶ After a longer stationary period when the vehicle has been braked to a stop by the system.

## Adjusting the speed

### Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted. The system will be activated.

The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

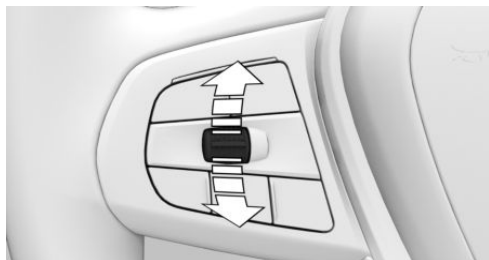
The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.



SET

Press the button.

## Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▶ Each time the rocker switch is tapped to the resistance point, the set speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▶ Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

Hold the rocker switch in position to repeat the action.

## Adjusting the distance

### Safety information

#### Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, deceleration can be late. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Be aware to the surrounding traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.

## Reducing the distance



Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

## Increasing the distance



Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

## Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unwanted vehicle deceleration or acceleration may occur.



Press the button on the steering wheel with the system interrupted.

Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- ▶ When the system is switched off.
- ▶ When drive-ready state is switched off.

## Changing between Cruise Control with/without Distance Control

### Safety information



#### Warning

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Adjust



the set speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.

## Changing over the Cruise Control mode

Switching Cruise Control without Distance Control off and on:

➤  Press and hold this button.

➤  Press and hold this button.

Switching on distance control:

➤  Press the button.

➤  Press the button.

After changing, a Check Control message is displayed.

## Displays in the instrument cluster

### General information

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary.

### Display in the speedometer

Depending on the equipment, a mark in the speedometer displays the status of the system.



- Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- Gray marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.

➤ No marking: system is switched off.

### Indicator lights and warning lights

Depending on the equipment:

| Icon                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | White indicator light:<br>No distance control display, as the accelerator pedal is being pressed.                                                                                                                                    |
|  | Indicator light illuminates green:<br>Vehicle has been detected ahead of you.<br><br>The vehicle icon goes out if no vehicle in front is detected.<br><br>Indicator light flashes green:<br>Vehicle in front drove off.              |
|  | Indicator light illuminates gray:<br>System interrupted.                                                                                                                                                                             |
|  | Indicator light flashes gray:<br>Conditions are not adequate for the system to work.<br><br>The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal. |
|  | Warning light flashes red and acoustic signal sounds:<br>Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.                                                                                                                           |

## Displays in the Head-up display

### Set speed

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up display.



The icon is displayed when the set speed is reached.

### Distance information



The icon is displayed when the distance from the vehicle traveling ahead is too short.

The distance information is active in the following situations:

- ▷ Active Cruise Control with Distance Control switched off.
- ▷ Display in the Head-up display selected. Head-up display, refer to page 135.
- ▷ Distance too short.
- ▷ Speed greater than approx. 40 mph/70 km/h.

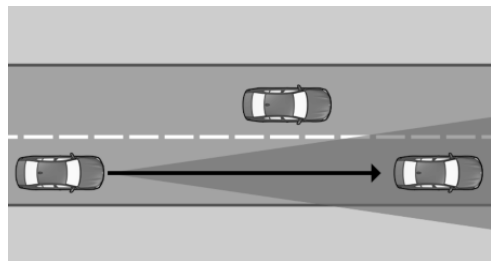
## System limits

### System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Cameras, refer to page 35.
- ▷ Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

### Detection range



The detection capability of the system and the automatic braking performance are limited.

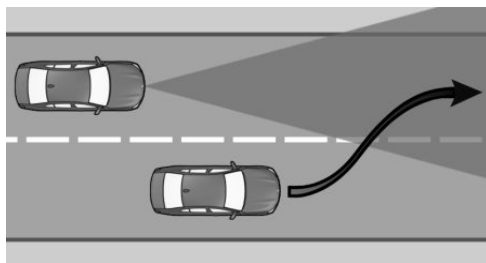
For instance, two-wheeled vehicles may not be detected.

### Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

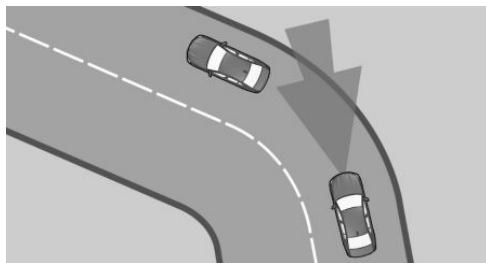
- ▷ For pedestrians or similarly slow-moving road users.
- ▷ Depending on the vehicle equipment and national availability, for red traffic lights.
- ▷ For cross traffic.
- ▷ For oncoming traffic.

## Merging vehicles



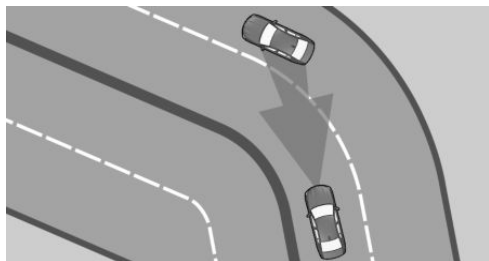
If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly merges into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. It may not be possible to restore the selected distance in certain situations, including if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles driving ahead of you, for instance when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if needed.

## Cornering



When the set speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly. Because curves may not be anticipated in advance, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise in tight curves where a vehicle driving ahead will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate for it by briefly accelerating. After releasing the accelerator pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

### Driving off

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive off automatically; for example:

- ▷ On steep uphill grades.
- ▷ In front of bumps in the road.

In these cases, step on the accelerator pedal.

### Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- ▷ Poorer vehicle detection.
- ▷ Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Drive attentively, and react to the current surrounding traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

## Speed Limit Assistant

### Principle

Speed Limit Assistant supports driving at the speed limit. A suggested speed can be applied.

### General information

When the systems in the vehicle, e.g., Speed Limit Info, detect a change of the speed limit, this new speed value can be applied for the following systems:

- ▷ Manual Speed Limiter.
- ▷ Cruise control.
- ▷ Active Cruise Control with Distance Control.

The speed value is suggested as the new desired speed to be applied. To apply the speed value, the corresponding system must be activated.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

#### **Warning**

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

## Overview

### Buttons on the steering wheel

| Button                                                                           | Function                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Accept suggested speed manually.                      |
|  | Rocker switch:<br>Set speed, refer to Cruise Control. |

### Turning Speed Limit Assistant on/off

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Limit Assistance"
7. "Speed limits"
8. Select the desired setting:
  - ▶ "Adjust manually": detected speed limits can be applied manually.
  - ▶ "Show anticipation": Depending on the national-market version: current and upcoming speed limits are displayed in the instrument cluster without being applied.
  - ▶ "Show current limit": current speed limits are displayed without being applied in the instrument cluster.
  - ▶ "Off": depending on the national-market version, Speed Limit Info and Speed Limit Assistant will be turned off.

### Displays in the instrument cluster

A message is displayed in the instrument cluster when the system and a driver assistance system are activated.

| Icon                                                                              | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Depending on the equipment version, the indicator light illuminates green, together with the icon for a speed control system:<br><br>Speed Limit Assistant is active and detected speed limits can be applied manually for the displayed system. |
|  | Detected change of a speed limit with immediate effect.                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|  | Depending on the national-market version, it is possible to switch between the units of measurement.                                                                                                                                             |
|  | Indicator light illuminates green: the detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button.<br><br>After it has been applied, a green checkmark is displayed.                                                                                |

### Manual adoption

A detected speed limit can be applied manually for the active driver assistance system.

|                                                                                   |                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
|  | When the SET icon illuminates, press the button. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|

### Speed adjustment

#### Principle

It can be adjusted whether the speed limit is applied exactly or with a tolerance.

#### General information

You can configure a speed adaptation for all speed limits and an additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h.

The additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h can be activated or deactivated.

## Setting the speed adjustment

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Limit Assistance"
7. Select the desired setting:
  - ▷ "Adjust speed limits": set tolerance for the speed adaptation that affects all speeds.
  - ▷ "2nd adjustm. up to": activate or deactivate additional speed adaptation.
  - ▷ "Adjust speed limits": With additional speed adjustment activated, set the tolerance for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h.

## System limits

Speed Limit Assistant is based on the Speed Limit Info system.

Consider the system limits of Speed Limit Info.

Additional information:

- ▷ System limits of Speed Limit Information, refer to page [194](#).
- ▷ System limits of the sensors, refer to page [35](#).

# Parking

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page [8](#).

## Parking assistance systems

### General information

The parking assistance systems include different individual systems. The individual systems provide support with assistance functions, sensors and different camera views when parking and maneuvering or driving in reverse.

Additional information:

- ▶ Rearview camera, refer to page [212](#).
- ▶ Park Distance Control, refer to page [212](#).
- ▶ Active Park Distance Control, refer to page [215](#).
- ▶ Automatic Parking Assistant, refer to page [216](#).
- ▶ Back-up Assistant, refer to page [219](#).

### Safety information

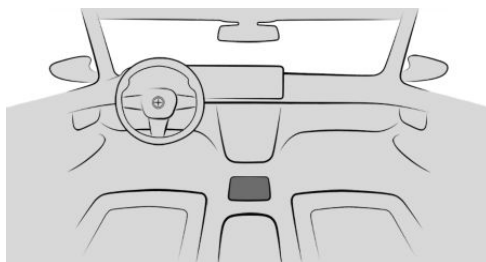
#### **Warning**

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and

braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

### Overview

#### Button in the vehicle



Park assistance button

### Sensors

The parking assistance systems are controlled by the following sensors:

- ▶ Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▶ Ultrasonic sensors, side.
- ▶ Radar sensors, side, rear.
- ▶ Rearview camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page [35](#).

### Operating concept

The camera-based individual systems are operated with the function bars on the control display. The camera views can be viewed by selecting the appropriate icon.

Some parking assistance systems can be set individually in the Park menu.



## Calling up Park menu

### Via Parking Assistant button

-  Press the button.
-  "Settings"
- Select the desired settings.

### Via iDrive

-  Apps menu
- "Vehicle apps"
- "Driving settings"
- "Driver Assistance"
- "Parking and maneuvering"
- Select the desired settings.

## Display

### Principle

The parking assistance systems support parking and maneuvering or reversing by displaying Park Distance Control and various camera views.

### General information

Depending on the view, the vehicle's surroundings or a part of it is depicted.

### Turning display on/off

#### General information

The parking assistance systems view switches off automatically when driving forwards or if a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

#### With reverse

When drive-ready state is switched on, the display is automatically switched on if selector lever position R is engaged.

### Via Parking Assistant button



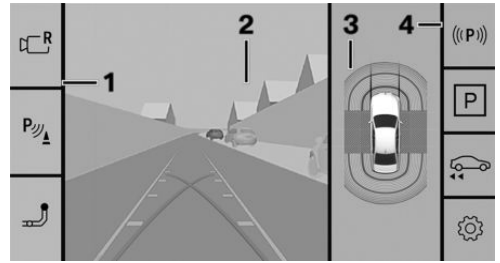
Press the button.

### Display on the control display

#### General information

Depending on vehicle equipment and on the activated parking assistance system, the control display will vary.

#### Display



- Toolbar, left
- Camera image
- Selection window
- Toolbar, right

### Toolbar, left

Different views can be selected using the left toolbar depending on vehicle equipment:

- ▷  "Rear view camera"  
The view of the rearview camera is displayed.
- ▷  "Only park. sensors"  
The Park Distance Control view is displayed.

### Toolbar, right

The parking assistance functions are displayed in the right toolbar. The display may vary depending on vehicle equipment.

- ▷ Status of the parking assistance systems.
- ▷  "Autom. Parking"  
Functions of the Automatic Parking Assistant.
- ▷  "Back-Up Assistant"  
Functions of the Back-up Assistant.
- ▷  "Settings"  
Settings in the Park menu.

## Status of parking assistance systems

The status of active parking assistance systems is indicated by icons in the right-hand toolbar.

| Icon                                                                            | Meaning                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | No search for Automatic Parking Assistant offers.<br>Automatic Parking Assistant has failed.                                                                                                                                                           |
|  | Search for Automatic Parking Assistant offers is active.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|  | Automatic Parking Assistant: if the icon is green, the Automatic Parking Assistant is active. The system assumes vehicle control.<br><br>Back-up Assistant: if the icon is green, the Back-up Assistant is active. The system takes over the steering. |

## Additional displays

### General information

Additional displays can be shown in the camera image of the display of the parking assistance systems, e.g., parking aid lines, to make parking and maneuvering easier.

Several additional displays can be active at the same time.

## Turning additional displays on/off

### Via Parking Assistant button

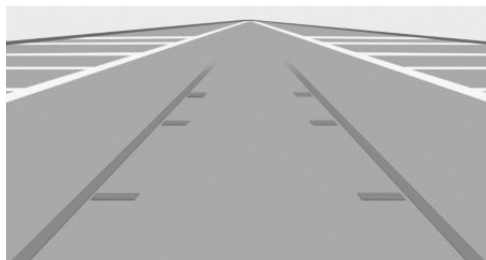
1. Enable the camera image.
2.  "Settings"
3. Select the desired settings.

### Via iDrive

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking and maneuvering"
6. Select the desired setting.

## Parking aid lines

### Pathway lines

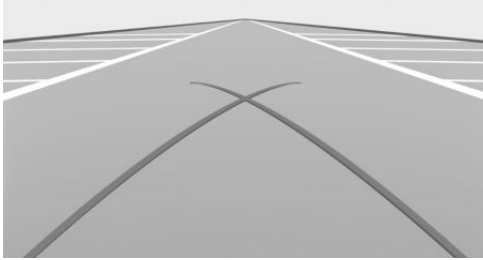


Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Lane lines are displayed in front of or behind the vehicle depending on the gear engaged.

The pathway lines are continuously adjusted to the steering movements depending on the steering-wheel angle.

## Turning circle lines



Turning circle lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

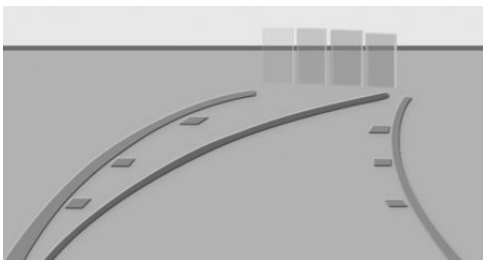
The lines show the course of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road.

Only one turning circle line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

## Using parking aid lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning circle line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning circle line.

## Obstacle marking



Obstacles are detected by the sensors.

The obstacles detected by the Park Distance Control are shown by marks in the camera image.

Colored gradients for the obstacle markings in green, yellow and red indicate the distances.

## Functional limitations

The system can be used only to a limited extent in the following situations:

- ▷ With a door open.
- ▷ With open cargo area.
- ▷ With exterior mirrors folded in.

Areas with gray hatching with an icon in the camera image identify areas that are currently not shown, such as an open door.

## System limits

### Safety information



#### Warning

Due to its limits, the system may not react, or it may react too late or in a manner that is not consistent with normal use. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

## System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page [35](#).

## Field of view

Because of the camera angle, the areas under the vehicle cannot be viewed by the cameras.

## Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

The objects displayed on the control display may be closer than they appear. Do not esti-



mate the distance to the objects on the control display.

Protruding cargo or a rear-mounted luggage rack can limit the detection range of the camera.

## Malfunction

A camera failure is displayed on the control display.

The detection range of the failed camera is shown shaded on the control display.

## Rearview camera

### Principle

The rearview camera helps when reverse parking and maneuvering. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the control display.

Additional views can be shown on the display, e.g., parking aid lines and obstacle markings.

### General information

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

### Functional requirements

- ▶ The trunk is fully closed.
- ▶ The camera area is clean and clear.

### Turning the rearview camera on/off

#### Turning the camera view on automatically

When drive-ready state is switched on, the rearview camera is automatically switched on if selector lever position R is engaged.

#### Turning the camera view off automatically

The rearview camera turns off automatically when driving forward or when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

#### Turning the camera view on/off manually



1. Press the button.
2.  Select the icon on the left toolbar.  
To exit the rearview camera view, select another camera view on the left toolbar.

### Deactivated rearview camera

When the rearview camera is deactivated, for instance when the trunk is open, the camera image is displayed with gray shading.

## Park Distance Control

### Principle

Park Distance Control assists with parking. Acoustic and visual warnings signal obstacles in front of or behind the vehicle.

Obstacles that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors can also be reported.

### General information

The range of the system, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning sounds in case of an impending collision at a distance to the object of approx. 27 in/70 cm.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is issued as early as a distance to the object of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

## Safety information

### **Warning**

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

### **Warning**

Due to high speeds when the Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off quickly while Park Distance Control is not yet active.

## Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▶ Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▶ Ultrasonic sensors, side.

## Turning Park Distance Control on/off

### Turning on the system automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- ▶ When drive-ready state is switched on when selector lever position R is engaged.
- ▶ While approaching detected obstacles if the speed is lower than approx.

2.5 mph/4 km/h. The activation distance depends on the situation in question.

The automatic activation of detected obstacles can be activated or deactivated.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking and maneuvering"
6. "Automatic PDC activation"

### Turning off the system automatically

When driving forward, the system turns off automatically as needed when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

### Turning the system on/off manually



Press the button.

- ▶ On: the LED illuminates.
- ▶ Off: the LED goes out.

If the system is manually switched on when the reverse gear is engaged, the rearview camera image is displayed.

Depending on the national-market version, the system cannot be turned off manually when the reverse gear is engaged.

## Acoustic warning

### General information

An intermittent tone indicates when the vehicle is approaching an object. E.g., when an object is detected at the rear left of the vehicle, a sound is heard from the rear left speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals of the intermittent tones.

When the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 in/20 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.



When there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, at a distance smaller than approx. 8 in/20 cm, an alternating continuous tone will sound between the front and rear speakers.

The intermittent tones and the continuous tone are turned off when selector lever position P is engaged.

Depending on national-market version, the intermittent tones are switched off after a short time when the vehicle is stationary.

If an object approaches when the vehicle is stationary, the acoustic signal is reactivated.

## Adjusting the volume

The volume of the acoustic warning can be adjusted.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking and maneuvering"
6. "PDC signal volume"
7. Set the desired value.

## Visual warning

### General information

The approach to an object is displayed on the control display as soon as the system is activated.

Objects that are farther away are already displayed before a signal sounds.

Depending on the view, pathway lines, turning circle lines and obstacle markings are shown for a better estimation of the space required.

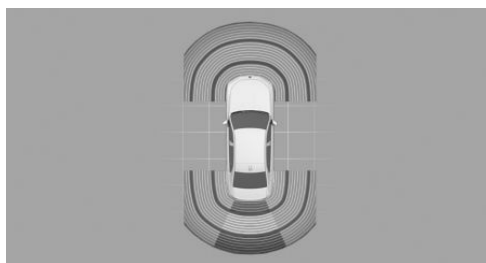
Depending on the equipment, the detection range of the sensors is represented by shaded annular surfaces. Green, yellow, and red markings indicate when obstacles are detected in the detection zone.

If the vehicle is equipped with Cross Traffic Warning: the display also warns the driver of vehicles approaching from behind.

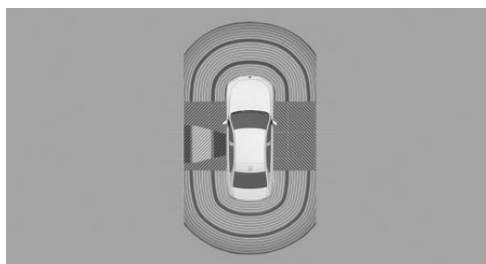
To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

### Display

Depending on vehicle equipment, warnings may be displayed in front of, next to, and behind the vehicle.



View behind vehicle.



View next to vehicle.

- Shaded area: detection range of sensors.
- Gray shaded area: no obstacles were detected in the detection range.
- Colored marks in shaded area: obstacles were detected in the detection range.
- Shaded area interrupted: the area next to the vehicle has not yet been detected.

## System limits

### General information

The function for protecting the vehicle sides only shows stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors when passing by.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. When the vehicle is stationary, the gray shaded areas on the sides are hidden after a certain time. The area on the side of the vehicle must be newly captured.

Also follow the information on system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

### Unwarranted warnings

Reaching the system limits can cause unwarranted warnings.

To prevent unwarranted warnings, for instance in car washes, turn off automatic Park Distance Control activation on obstacle detection.

### Malfunction



An icon is displayed on the control display.

Depending on the vehicle equipment: the detection range of the sensors is not displayed on the control display.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Park Distance Control malfunction. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Active Park Distance Control

### Principle

The Park Distance Control brake function initiates emergency braking if there is an acute risk of collision.

## General information

Due to system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available below walking speed when driving in reverse or rolling backward.

Pressing the accelerator pedal interrupts the brake intervention. Emergency braking is not performed.

After emergency braking to a stop, further creeping toward an obstacle is possible. Proceed with caution. To move forward, lightly press the accelerator pedal and release as needed.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed longer, the vehicle drives off. Manual braking is possible at any time.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

## Safety information

### Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

## Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors in the rear bumpers.
- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors, side.



## Deactivating Active Park Distance Control temporarily

After emergency braking, the function can be temporarily deactivated on the control display.

1. "Obstacle detected. Emergency braking."
2. "Deactivate temporarily"

During continued driving in this surrounding situation, no further emergency braking will occur.

The function is automatically reactivated when Park Distance Control is switched on again.

## Settings

It is possible to set which areas on the vehicle will be protected by the system.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking and maneuvering"
6. "Active PDC emergency braking"
7. Select the desired setting.

## Display



As soon as the system engages, an icon is displayed with a corresponding message.

## System limits

### General information

Follow the system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

## Automatic Parking Assistant

### Principle

Automatic Parking Assistant provides support when parallel parking and parking transverse to the road.

The ultrasonic sensors measure both sides of the vehicle when driving slowly forward. Suitable parking spaces are calculated based on the objects detected, e.g., parking vehicles. The system status is displayed.

Manual transmission: The system calculates the best possible parking line for driving into parking spaces, and takes control of steering while parking.

M Steptronic Sport transmission: The system calculates the best possible parking line for driving into parking spaces, and takes control of the vehicle while parking.

The operating principle and operation of the system is divided into the following steps:

- ▶ Parking space search.
- ▶ Turning on.
- ▶ Parking.

The parking manoeuvre during parking is performed automatically.

### General information

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

### Safety information



#### Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and



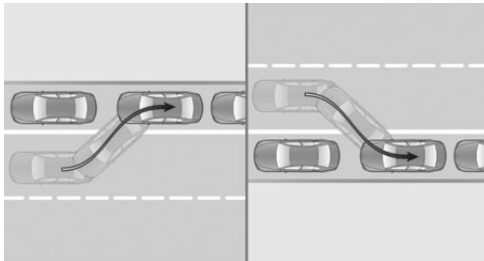
braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

### **Warning**

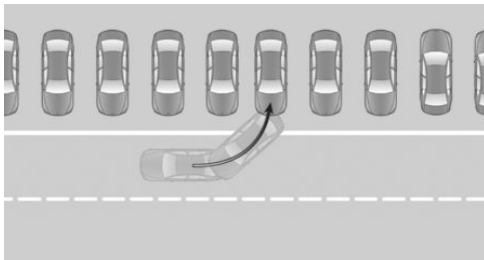
The system can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

## Parking methods

Park Assist supports the following functions:



Parallel parking: reverse parking parallel to the road.



Perpendicular parking: reverse parking perpendicular to the road.

## Sensors

The Automatic Parking Assistant is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors, side.

## Functional requirements

### Measurement of parking spaces

- ▷ Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- ▷ Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

### Suitable parking space

Longitudinal parking:

- ▷ Minimum length of a detected object, e.g., a parking vehicle: approx. 3 ft/1 m.
- ▷ Minimum length of gap between two objects: own vehicle length plus approx. 2.6 ft/0.8 m.
- ▷ Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

Perpendicular parking:

- ▷ Minimum length of a detected object, e.g., a parking vehicle: approx. 3 ft/1 m.
- ▷ Minimum width of the gap: own vehicle width plus approx. 2.3 ft/0.7 m.
- ▷ Minimum depth: own vehicle length.

The depth of perpendicular parking spaces must be estimated by the driver. Due to technical limitations, the system is only able to approximate the depth of perpendicular parking spaces.

## Parking operation

- ▷ Doors and cargo area are closed.
- ▷ M Steptronic Sport transmission: driver's seat belt is fastened.



## Turning the signal tone on/off

The signal tone for suitable parking spaces can be turned on and off.

1. ■■ Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking and maneuvering"
6. "Sound when available"

## Parking using the Automatic Parking Assistant

1. For the parking space search when driving past parked vehicles at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and a distance of max. 5 ft/1.5 m.

(«P») The parking space search is activated.



2. Press the  button or engage reverse gear.

The parking assistance systems view is displayed.

The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the control display.

3. Select suggested parking method.

 Green: the system takes control of the parking operation.

4. Follow the instructions on the control display.

Manual transmission: to achieve the best possible parking position, wait for the automatic steering operation after changing gear on the stationary vehicle.

M Steptronic Sport transmission: the speed can be reduced using the brake. Other interventions will cancel the system. At the end of the parking operation, selector lever position P is set.

Depending on national-market version, an intermittent or continuous tone sounds for Park Distance Control.

The end of the parking operation is indicated on the control display.

5. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

## Canceling Automatic Parking Assistant manually

The Automatic Parking Assistant can be canceled manually at any time, e.g.:

- ▶  Press the button.

- ▶  "Autom. Parking": select the icon on the control display.

## Canceling Automatic Parking Assistant automatically

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

- ▶ When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- ▶ Possibly on snow-covered or slippery road.
- ▶ When there are obstacles that are hard to overcome, such as curbs.
- ▶ When there are obstacles that suddenly appear.
- ▶ With insufficient distances, which are indicated by Park Distance Control.
- ▶ When a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.
- ▶ When changing over to another function on the control display.

Manual transmission:

- ▶ If a gear is selected that does not match the instruction on the control display.
- ▶ If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph/10 km/h.
- ▶ The turn signal opposite to the desired parking side is switched on.

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

- ▶ With open cargo area.
- ▶ With the doors open.
- ▶ When setting the parking brake.
- ▶ When operating the accelerator pedal or the selector lever.
- ▶ The brake pedal remains depressed for longer while the vehicle is at a standstill.
- ▶ When unfastening the driver's seat belt.

A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

## Continuing the parking operation

An interrupted parking operation can be continued, if needed.

Restart the Automatic Parking Assistant and follow the instructions on the control display.

## System limits

### General information

Follow the system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

### No parking assistance

The Automatic Parking Assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- ▶ In tight curves.
- ▶ For diagonal parking spaces.
- ▶ For parking spaces that are only marked with lines on the ground. The system orients itself according to objects.
- ▶ For special parking lots such as pay parking lots with automatic locking mechanisms,

coin parking or mechanical parking systems.

### Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▶ On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- ▶ On slippery ground.
- ▶ On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- ▶ With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- ▶ In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.
- ▶ With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.
- ▶ Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

### Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The Automatic Parking Assistant has malfunctioned. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Back-up assistant

### Principle

The Back-up Assistant assists when driving in reverse, for instance when driving out of tight or confusing parking or street situations.

### General information

The vehicle stores the driving movements of the last distance covered. This stored distance can be driven in reverse with automated steering.



The system takes over the steering. The speed must be controlled by the driver using the accelerator pedal and the brake.

A maximum of 164 ft/50 m are stored.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

## Safety information

### Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

### Warning

The system can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

## Functional requirements

- ▶ Drive forward without interruption to store the distance covered.
- ▶ To store the distance covered, do not drive faster than 22 mph/35 km/h.
- ▶ Dynamic Stability Control is activated.

## Driving in reverse with automated steering

1. Turn on drive-ready state.



2. With the vehicle at a standstill, press button or engage reverse gear.

The parking assistance systems view is displayed.

3.  "Back-Up Assistant"

Follow the instructions on the control display where required.

4. Take your hands off the steering wheel and carefully drive in reverse with the accelerator pedal and the brake.

 Green: the system takes control of steering.

When driving in reverse, observe the vehicle's surroundings.

In case of obstacles, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle. Follow the instructions for Park Distance Control.

5. Right before the end of the stored distance covered, a signal tone will sound and a message is displayed.

Stop no later than when normal road traffic is reached and take control of the vehicle, such as by shifting to forward gear.

## Canceling the Back-up Assistant manually

The assisted reversing by the Back-up Assistant can be canceled manually:

- ▶ Via touchscreen:  "Back-Up Assistant"
- ▶  Press the button.

## Canceling the Back-up Assistant automatically

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

- ▶ When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- ▶ When shifting from reverse to another selector lever position.
- ▶ During activation or intervention by driver assistance systems.
- ▶ After an extended period of time when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▶ When exiting the stored lane when reversing, for instance with maximum steering-wheel angle.
- ▶ When the view on the control display is overlaid with messages.
- ▶ In case of a slippery surface.
- ▶ When the vehicle is rolling, such as on a slope.
- ▶ In case of changed ambient conditions.
- ▶ If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph/9 km/h.
- ▶ Certain road characteristics, such as gradients, inclines or slippery road surface.
- ▶ Greatly deviating conditions when storing and driving the route, for instance other tires or changed ambient conditions like weather.

Also follow the information on system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

## System limits

- ▶ The maximum speed when driving in reverse is limited to approx. 6 mph/9 km/h. A warning is issued at a speed of approx. 4 mph/7 km/h.  
If the maximum speed is exceeded, the function is interrupted.
- ▶ After driving a stored distance covered with major steering-wheel angles, the function of the system will be limited for the return trip.

Different influences can lead to side deviations when driving the stored distance covered in reverse. For example, this includes the following factors:

- ▶ Steering movements when the vehicle is stationary while storing the distance covered.
- ▶ The speed is not adapted to the distance covered.

# Driving comfort

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page [8](#).

## Adaptive M chassis

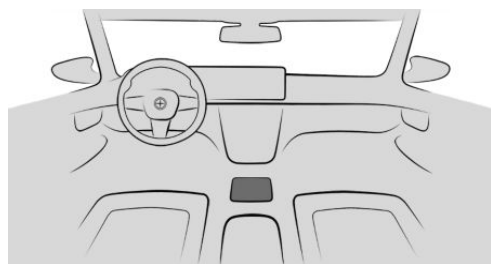
### Principle

By adjusting the dampers, the system reduces movement of the vehicle body when driving in a sporty way or on uneven roads.

This enhances the driving dynamics and driving comfort depending on the road condition and driving style.

### Overview

#### Button in the vehicle



SETUP

SETUP

## Programs

| Program      | Damping settings     |
|--------------|----------------------|
| "COMFORT"    | Comfort-oriented.    |
| "SPORT"      | Balanced out.        |
| "SPORT PLUS" | Consistently sporty. |

## Selecting a program

### Using the button



Press the button and select the desired program on the control display.

### Via iDrive

Adaptive M running gear settings can be configured in M Setup.

Additional information:

M Setup, refer to page [181](#).

## Display in the instrument cluster



When the display for M Setup is activated in the instrument cluster, the selected program is displayed.

Additional information:

Central display area, refer to page [145](#)

# Climate control

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## Air conditioning control

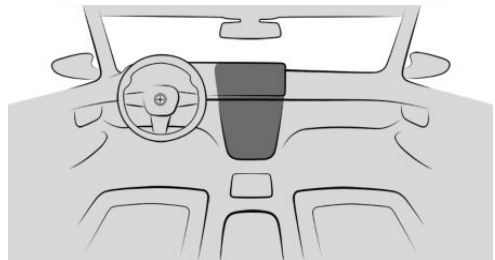
### Overview

#### Functions in the Climate menu

| Icon                                                                               | Function                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
|    | Automatic program.                  |
|    | Temperature.                        |
|   | Air conditioning.                   |
|  | Maximum cooling.                    |
|  | Air recirculation mode.             |
|  | Automatic recirculated-air control. |
|  | Fresh air.                          |

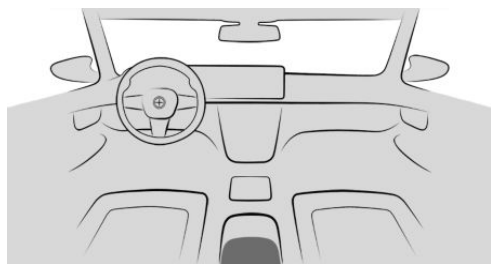
| Icon                                                                              | Function          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
|  | Air flow.         |
|  | Air distribution. |
|  | SYNC program.     |
|  | Seat heating.     |

#### Buttons, automatic climate control



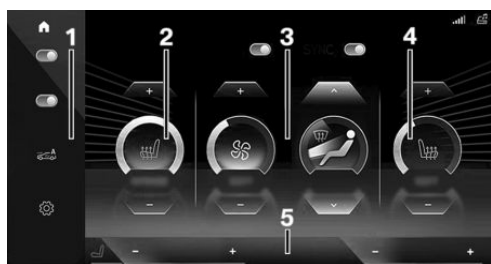
| Icon                                                                                | Function               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
|  | Defrost function.      |
|  | Rear window defroster. |

## Buttons, rear automatic climate control



| Icon                                                                             | Function           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
|  | Automatic program. |
|  | Temperature.       |
|  | Air distribution.  |
|  | Switching off.     |

## View on the control display



- 1 Toolbar
- 2 Climate control functions, driver's side
- 3 Climate control functions
- 4 Climate control functions, passenger's side
- 5 Climate control bar

## Calling up climate control functions

Via climate control bar:

"CLIMATE MENU" tap in the center of the climate control bar.

Or:

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Climate control"

## Turning the air conditioning system on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "All climate functions"

The complete air conditioning system is turned on/off with the last settings.

When the air conditioning system is turned on, individual climate control functions can be turned off.

## Turning rear automatic climate control on/off

### Functional requirements

- ▷ Automatic climate control is turned on.
- ▷ Defrost function is deactivated.

### Via iDrive

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Second row of seats"
4. "Rear climate control"
5. Select the desired setting.

The rear automatic climate control can be activated with standard setting for temperature and AUTO program:

"Activate with default settings"

## Switching on using the button

Press one of the following buttons:



- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Automatic program.
- ▷ Air distribution, manual.

### Switching off using the button



Press the button.

### Locking the rear automatic climate control

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Second row of seats"
4. "Lock rear climate control"

## Automatic program

### Principle

The automatic program ensures a comfortable climate, which can be modified with the desired temperature and individual settings.

The automatic program cools, ventilates or heats the vehicle interior automatically.

### General information

Depending on the equipment, the automatic program provides the best possible settings for climate control functions depending on the outside temperature, interior temperature, sunlight, seat occupancy and the desired temperature setting:

- ▷ Air flow.
- ▷ Air distribution.
- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Seat heating.

The automatic program takes seat occupancy into account, regulating the climate in an energy-efficient manner that is tailored to the occupants.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the automatic program in order to prevent window condensation to the extent possible.

### Turning the automatic program on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Automatic program"
3. Select the desired setting.

### Switching the rear climate control automatic program on/off

### Using the button



Press the button.

The LED of the button is illuminated when the automatic program is turned on.

### Setting the intensity

#### General information

When the automatic program is activated, the intensity of individual climate control functions can be individually adjusted, for example:

- ▷ "LOW"
- ▷ "MEDIUM"
- ▷ "HIGH"

Each level has a specific control range of the intensity.

Based on the stored data models, the intensities are dynamically adjusted while driving. It is not necessary to manually change the desired intensity to lower or higher levels while driving.



## Example of function

When the automatic program is turned on, the intensity of the seat heating can be adjusted:

1. "CLIMATE MENU" tap in the center of the climate control bar.
2.  Seat heating.
3. Select desired setting, for example, "HIGH".

The individually selected settings of the climate control functions are stored and automatically set up again, such as after the vehicle is started again.

## Display

The indicator in the climate control bar provides information about the temperature difference between the configured desired temperature and current interior temperature.

- ▶ The red or blue bar next to the temperature display indicates the progress of heating or cooling.
- ▶ The desired interior temperature is reached as soon as the bar is no longer displayed.

Active climate control functions such as seat heating are displayed as icons in the climate control bar.

Active climate control functions are highlighted in color in the climate control menu.

## Temperature

### Principle

The automatic climate control cools or heats to the configured temperature and then keeps the temperature constant.

### General information

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

## Setting the temperature



You can set the desired temperature for driver and front passenger individually on the menu bar.

- ▶ **+** Raise the temperature.
- ▶ **-** Lower temperature.

## Configuring the temperature adjustment

When the automatic program is switched on, the heating and cooling speed can be adjusted as follows:

- ▶ "BALANCED".  
This setting enables a smooth, low-noise adjustment of the interior temperature.
- ▶ "DYNAMIC".  
The setting enables a quick adjustment of the interior temperature with a high air volume.

## Setting the rear automatic climate control temperature

### Via iDrive

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Second row of seats"
4. Set the desired temperature.

## Using the button



Press the left or right button side to set the desired temperature.

## Upper body temperature

### General information

The air temperature in the upper body area can be adjusted.

This does not change the set interior temperature for the driver and front passenger.

### Adjusting the upper body temperature

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Temp. adjustment upper body"
4. Increase or decrease temperature.

## Air conditioning

### Principle

The air in the interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

### Functional requirement

Standby or drive-ready state is switched on.

### Switching the cooling function on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "A/C"

Depending on the weather, the windshield and the side windows may fog up briefly when drive-ready state is switched on.

When using the cooling mode, condensation that will exit below the vehicle.

## Maximum cooling

### Principle

The function enables a quick and intense cooling of the interior.

### General information

The system is set to the lowest temperature and maximum air volume.

The function is automatically activated in the rear when the SYNC program is turned on.

### Functional requirement

The function is available at an outside temperature above approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the drive-ready state switched on.

### Turning maximum cooling on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "MAX A/C"

Air flows out of the air vents to the upper body area. Open the vents.

## Air recirculation mode

### Principle

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the interior air.

### General information

If there is window condensation, turn off the air recirculation.

When the air recirculation is turned off, outside air is directed into the interior.

In the automatic recirculated-air control, outside air is drawn in or the interior air is circulated, depending on the outside air quality.



The interior filter cleans the incoming fresh air or the circulated interior air in recirculation mode.

## Turning air recirculation on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. The current operating mode is displayed in the toolbar. Select the desired setting in the toolbar:
  - ▷ "Air recirculation"
  - ▷ "Fresh air"
  - ▷ "Auto air recirculation"

Depending on vehicle equipment, air recirculation will turn off automatically based on ambient conditions in order to prevent window condensation.

## Air flow

### General information

The air flow generated by the blower can be adjusted as needed.

## Adjusting the air flow

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2.  Air flow.
3. Select the desired setting.

The air flow may be reduced to preserve the vehicle battery.

## Air distribution settings

### General information

The air distribution can be adjusted as required in manual mode.

## Adjusting the air distribution

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2.  Air distribution.
3. Select the desired setting.

The selected air distribution is displayed.

## Adjusting the air distribution of the rear climate control



Press the button repeatedly. Select the desired setting.

The selected air distribution is shown on the climate control display.

## SYNC program

### Principle

If SYNC program is activated, the settings on the driver's side are transferred to the passenger's side and to the rear.

### General information

The following settings can be transferred:

- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Air distribution.
- ▷ Automatic program.

## Turning the SYNC program on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "SYNC"

If the settings on the front passenger side or in the rear are changed, the program is automatically switched off.

## Defrost function

### Principle

With the defrost function, ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

### General information

The air flow and air temperature are automatically optimized for the removal of ice and condensation.

The air distribution is directed toward the windshield and front side windows.

If there is window condensation, turn on the automatic program to take advantage of the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

When the defrost function is turned on, the rear automatic climate control is deactivated to provide maximum performance.

### Turning the defrost function on/off



Press the button.

The LED of the button is illuminated when the system is switched on.

## Rear window defroster

### Principle

With the rear window defroster, ice and condensation are quickly removed from the rear window.

### Functional requirement

Standby or drive-ready state is switched on.

## Turning the rear window defroster on/off



Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with rear window defroster switched on.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

## Seat heating

### Principle

The system heats the seats as necessary.

### General information

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after an intermediate stop, the functions are turned on automatically with the temperature that was last set.

### Turning the seat heating on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU" tap in the center of the climate control bar.
2.  Seat heating.
3. Select the desired setting.

## Ventilation

### Principle

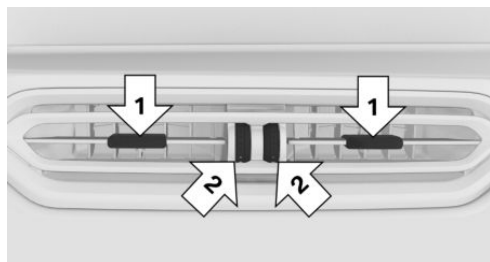
The ventilation system offers individual ranges of adjustment for direct or indirect ventilation to optimize the air flows in the vehicle.

### General information

Open the air vents and position them to ensure effective climate control.

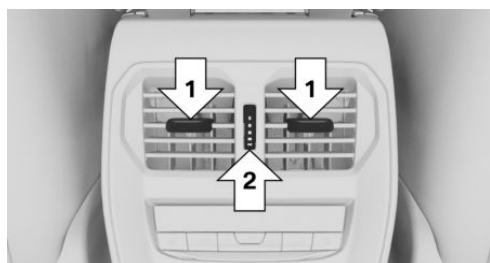
The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the set desired temperature.

## Front ventilation



- ▷ Lever for changing the airflow direction, arrow 1.
- ▷ Thumbwheel for the variable adjustment of the air flow on the vents, arrows 2.

## Ventilation in the rear



- ▷ Lever for changing the airflow direction, arrow 1.
- ▷ Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the air vents, arrow 2.

## Setting the ventilation

Depending on the desired ventilation, align the air flow directly or indirectly toward the passengers.

## Air quality

### General information

The air quality in the interior is improved by the following components:

- ▷ Emission tested passenger compartment.
- ▷ Interior filter.
- ▷ Air conditioning system to control the temperature, air flow and recirculated-air mode.
- ▷ Pre-ventilation.

### Interior filter

The interior filter cleans the incoming fresh air or the circulated interior air in recirculation mode.

Depending on the equipment:

- ▷ Dust and pollen is filtered out from the incoming air.
- ▷ Nano-particle emissions are reduced.
- ▷ Gaseous pollutants are filtered.
- ▷ Microbial particles, viruses and allergens are filtered.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having the interior filter changed during vehicle maintenance.

## Pre-ventilation

### Principle

The car's interior can be cooled or heated before driving off with the pre-ventilation. Depending on set temperature and ambient temperature, the car's interior is ventilated or possibly heated using the residual engine heat.

### General information

The system can be switched on and off directly or via a preset departure time.

The activation time is determined based on the outside temperature. The system promptly switches on before the selected departure time.

The system switches off automatically after a certain period of time. The system continues to run for some time after being switched off.

## Functional requirements

- ▶ The vehicle is in idle state or standby state.
- ▶ The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.  
If pre-ventilation is switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. Thus, limit the maximum activation time to save the vehicle battery. The system will be available again after the engine is started or after a short trip.
- ▶ Time and date are set correctly.
- ▶ The ventilation air vents are open.

## Switching pre-ventilation on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Pre-ventilation"
4. Select the desired setting.

## Departure time

### General information

Different departure times can be set to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

- ▶ One-time departure time: the time can be set.  
The system is switched on once.
- ▶ Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week can be set.  
On the desired weekdays, the system will be switched on before the set departure time.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- ▶ Set departure times.
- ▶ Activate departure times.

A minimum of 10 minutes should pass between setting and activating the departure time and the planned departure time to allow a sufficient period of time for the climate control.

## Setting the departure time

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Pre-ventilation"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Select the desired departure time.
6. Set the desired departure time.
7. Select day of the week, if needed.

## Activating the departure time

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Pre-ventilation"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Activate the desired departure time.

## Display

| Icon                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Icon in the center console at the top.<br>Icon illuminates: a departure time is activated.<br>Icon flashes: pre-ventilation is switched on. |

## Activating with My BMW App

Depending on vehicle equipment, the My BMW App with remote functionality can be used to turn on pre-cooling at a preset departure time or immediately.

## Pre-conditioning through Remote Engine Start

### Principle

Pre-conditioning cools or heats the car's interior prior to start of the trip to a comfortable temperature. The system automatically cools,



vents, and heats depending on the interior, external, and set temperature. Snow and ice may be removed more easily.

The system starts the engine automatically and allows it to run for a limited period of time.

## Safety information

### DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can pollute the area in and around the vehicle or penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas or areas with insufficient ventilation, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation. Do not switch on stationary climate control in enclosed areas or areas with insufficient ventilation, e.g. in enclosed garages.

### Warning

When stationary climate control is in operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust system. If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of fire. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts during stationary climate control operation, e.g. leaves, grass, gas, gasoline, oil or other combustible objects.

## Functional requirements

- ▶ The vehicle is in idle state or standby state.
- ▶ Battery is sufficiently charged.
- ▶ The fuel tank capacity is sufficient.

- ▶ Hood is closed.
- ▶ Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- ▶ Air vents are opened.

## Enabling the automatic engine start function

The automatic engine start must be enabled before using the system. Otherwise, the engine cannot switch on automatically to climatize the car's interior.

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Remote Engine Start"
5. "Start engine for climate cont."
6. Confirm the disclaimer.

## Turning on/turning off the pre-conditioning

### General information

The system switches off automatically after max. 15 minutes for safety reasons.

The system can be switched on a maximum of two times in a row.

The system will be available again as soon as the drive-ready state is activated and deactivated again.

### Switching on via iDrive

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Start now"

### Switching on/off via vehicle key

The system can be switched on and off using the vehicle key.





Press the button on the vehicle key three times within 1 second.

After operating the vehicle key, it will take approximately 3 seconds until the engine is switched on.

To switch off the system, press the button again three times.

### Switching off with the Start/Stop button

The system can be switched off directly by pressing the Start/Stop button without depressing the brake pedal.

## Climate control for departure time

### General information

Scheduled departure times can be set up in the system to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

- ▶ One-time departure time: the time of the scheduled departure can be set.  
The system is switched on once.
- ▶ Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week of the scheduled departure can be set.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- ▶ Set departure times.
- ▶ Activate departure times.

The system is activated automatically a few minutes before the set departure time. The system remains switched on for a short time after the set departure time.

For safety reasons, the air conditioning can only be activated once for the departure time.

The system will be available again as soon as the drive-ready state is activated and deactivated again.

Observe the information about the intended use of the vehicle.

Additional information:  
For Your Own Safety, refer to page 8.

### Setting the departure time

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select day of the week, if needed.

### Activating the departure time

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Activate the desired departure time.

## Display



In the instrument cluster:  
The engine runs for the purpose of operating the pre-conditioning. The vehicle is not ready to drive.

| Icon                                                                                | Description                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Icon in the center console at the top.<br>Icon illuminates: a departure time is activated.<br>Icon flashes: pre-conditioning is switched on. |

### Confirmation signals from the vehicle

The activation of the system is confirmed by flashing twice.

The parking lights are switched on as long as the system is switched on.



# Interior equipment

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## Integrated universal remote control

### Principle

The integrated universal remote control in the interior mirror can operate remote-controlled systems such as garage door openers, alarm systems or locking systems.

### General information

The integrated universal remote control replaces up to three different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed with the desired functions.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

If possible, do not install the antenna of the remote-controlled system near metal objects to ensure the best possible operation.

### Safety information

#### Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, such as the garage door, may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk

of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information for the hand-held transmitter.

### Compatibility



If this icon is printed on the packaging or in the operating instructions of the remote-controlled system, the system is generally compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

Additional questions are answered by:

- ▶ An authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▶ [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

For any additional questions, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Control elements on the interior mirror



- ▶ Buttons, arrow 1.
- ▶ LED, arrow 2.
- ▶ Hand-held transmitter of the remote-controlled system, arrow 3.

## Programming the integrated universal remote control

### Functional requirement

The battery of the hand-held transmitter must be fully charged at the time of programming to ensure an optimal range of the integrated universal remote control.

### Programming individual buttons

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Turn on standby state.
3. Select desired button on the interior mirror:
  - ▶ Program available button:  
Press the button.
  - ▶ Program already assigned button:  
Press and hold the button for approx. 20 seconds.

The LED on the interior mirror will slowly begin flashing orange.

4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the remote-controlled system approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror.

The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.

5. Press and hold the button on the hand-held transmitter.

Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

6. The LED can illuminate in different ways:
  - ▶ The LED illuminates green: programming completed.  
Release button.
  - ▶ The LED flashes green rapidly: the hand-held transmitter was detected but programming is not complete.

Press and hold the button on the interior mirror for approx. 2 seconds. Perform this procedure three times.

If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for rolling code radio systems.

- ▶ LED does not illuminate green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

Repeat steps 3 to 5.

### Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the integrated universal remote control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Refer to information on synchronization in the operating instructions of the remote-controlled system.

1. Program the desired button on the interior mirror.
2. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the remote-controlled system, such as on the garage door.

You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

3. Press and hold the programmed button on the interior mirror for approx. 3 seconds.

If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to end synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

### Operation

After programming, the remote-controlled system can be operated with the button on the interior mirror.



Press and hold the desired button of the remote-controlled system within range until the function is triggered.

The LED on the interior mirror is continuously illuminated green during the transmission of the radio signal.

## Deleting a button assignment

The button assignment cannot be deleted individually.

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED flashes green rapidly.

All stored button assignments will be deleted.

## Sun visor

### Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

### Glare shield from the side

### Folding the sun visor out

1. Fold the sun visor down.
2. Detach it from the holder and swing it toward the side window.
3. Shift it back to the desired position.

### Folding the sun visor in

Proceed in the reverse order to close the sun visor.

### Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover.

## Sockets

### Principle

The socket can be used for electronic devices when the standby or drive-ready state is switched on.

### General information

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using unsuitable connectors.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags, such as portable navigation devices, can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior during unfolding. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.

#### **Warning**

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery via sockets or cigarette lighters in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12 V electrical system. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

#### **Warning**

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Insert the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

## Front center console

1. Press on the cover.



2. A socket is located between the cup holders. Detach the cover.



## USB port

### General information

Follow the information regarding the connection of mobile devices to the USB port in the section on USB connections.

Additional information:

USB connection, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication;

## In the center armrest



A USB port is located in the center armrest.

Properties:

- ▷ USB port Type C.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices.
- ▷ Charge current: max. 3 A.

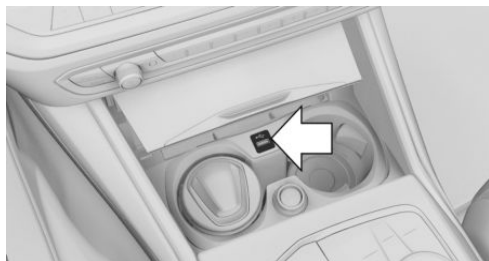
## In the front center console

### NOTICE

Objects in the storage compartment, e.g., large USB connectors, may block or damage the cover when it is being opened or closed. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the cover is clear while opening and closing it.



If necessary, push on the cover.



A USB port is located in the center console.

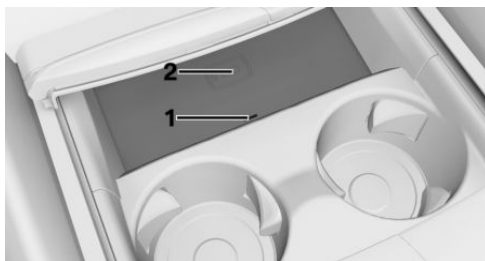
Properties:

- ▷ USB port Type A.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices and for data transfer.
- ▷ Charge current: max. 1.5 A.

not function correctly. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects on the tray together with the device.

## Overview

Tray in the center console:



- 1 LED
- 2 Storage area

## Wireless charging tray

### Principle

The wireless charging tray allows wireless charging of mobile phones and other mobile devices certified according to the Qi standard.

### General information

When inserting the device to be charged, make sure that there are no objects between the device to be charged and the wireless charging tray.

⚡ The charging process is shown by the charge indicator on the control display.

### Safety information

#### Warning

When charging a Qi-compatible device in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects on the tray together with the device can become very hot. If storage media or electronic cards, e.g., chip cards, cards with magnetic strips, or cards that transmit signals, are placed on the tray together with the device, they may

### Functional requirements

- ▷ The device to be charged must be certified according to the Qi standard.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ The mobile phone must not exceed the maximum size of approximately 6.0 x 3.1 x 0.7 in/154.5 x 80 x 18 mm.
- ▷ Protective sleeves and covers must be suitable for wireless charging.
- ▷ The mobile phone to be charged is located in the center of the tray. The mobile phone display is pointing upwards.

### Inserting the mobile phone

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Place the mobile phone centered in the tray with the display facing up.
3. Close the tray cover.

## LED displays

| Color  | Meaning                                                                                                                             |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Blue   | The mobile phone is charging.<br>The blue LED stays illuminated once the inserted mobile phone with Qi capability is fully charged. |
| Orange | The mobile phone is not charging.<br>Temperature of the mobile phone may be too high or foreign object may be in charging tray.     |
| Red    | The mobile phone is not charging.<br>Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.       |

- ▶ If storage media or electronic cards, e.g., chip cards, cards with magnetic strips, or cards for signal transmission, are located between the mobile phone and wireless charging tray.
- ▶ Due to protective sleeves and covers that exceed a thickness of 0.07 in/2 mm
- ▶ Due to protective sleeves and covers made of unsuitable material, e.g., with magnetic parts.
- ▶ Due to add-on parts for mobile phone, e.g., holders.
- ▶ By settings on the mobile phone, for instance for charging. Follow the relevant instructions on the control display and in the instructions for the mobile phone, if applicable.

## Forgotten warning

### General information

A warning can be given if a Qi-certified mobile phone was forgotten in the wireless charging tray when leaving the vehicle.

The forgotten warning is displayed in the instrument cluster.

### Enable/Disable Forgotten Warning

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Wireless charging tray"
5. "Mobile phone reminder"

## System limits

The charge current may be reduced or charging may be temporarily interrupted in the wireless charging tray in the following situations:

- ▶ Due to excessive temperatures on the surface of the tray and mobile phone.
- ▶ If there are objects between the mobile phone and the wireless charging tray.

# Storage compartments

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## Safety information

### Warning

Devices connected to the vehicle via a cable, such as mobile phones or loose objects, can be thrown through the vehicle interior while driving, such as in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

### Warning

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. Attached objects may come loose. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not use anti-slip pads.

## Glove compartment

### Safety information

#### Warning

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.

### Opening the glove compartment



Pull the handle.

## Fold-out compartment

### Safety information

#### Warning

The open fold-out compartment protrudes into the vehicle interior. Objects in the fold-out compartment can be thrown into the vehicle interior during the trip, for instance, in the event of an accident or braking or evasive



maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the fold-out compartment immediately after using it.

## Opening the fold-out compartment



Press the button and open the cover.

## Storage compartments in the doors

### General information

There are storage compartments in the doors.

### Safety information



#### Warning

Breakable objects, such as glass bottles or glasses, can break in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not use any breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

## Storage tray in center console

### Opening the storage compartment



Press on the cover.

### Closing the storage compartment

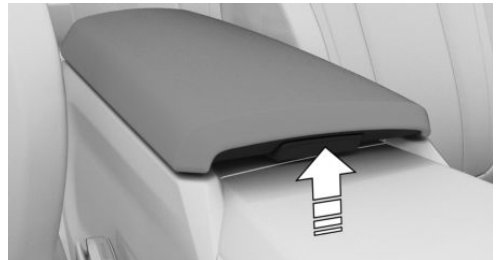
Pull the cover on the handle back.

## Front center armrest

### General information

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

### Opening the center armrest



Press the button.

### Closing the center armrest

Press the lid down until it engages.

## Front cup holder

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the surrounding traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

### Opening the cup holder



Press on the cover.



Two cup holders are located in the center console.

### Closing the cup holder

Pull the cover on the handle back.

## Coat hooks

### General information

The coat hooks are located on the door pillar in the rear.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Clothing articles on the coat hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of accident. When suspending clothing articles from the coat hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.

#### **Warning**

Improper use of the coat hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, for instance clothing articles, from the coat hooks.

# Cargo area

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## Loading

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

High gross vehicle weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden tire pressure loss. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing directional stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of accident. Pay attention to the permitted load-carrying capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross vehicle weight.

#### **Warning**

Devices connected to the vehicle via a cable, such as mobile phones or loose objects, can be thrown through the vehicle interior while driving, such as in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

#### **Warning**

Improperly stowed objects can slip and be thrown into the car's interior, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.

#### **NOTICE**

Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.

### Steps for determining correct load limit

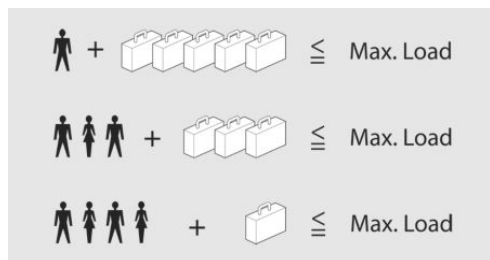
1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs" on the vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in the vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in the vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the



available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If the vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to the vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of the vehicle.

## Payload



The maximum payload is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

## Stowing and securing cargo

- ▶ Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- ▶ Do not stack cargo above the upper edge of the backrests.
- ▶ If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow large cargo.
- ▶ Fasten the aids for securing the load to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.
- ▶ Small and light cargo: secure with tensioning straps or tension bands or with a luggage compartment net.
- ▶ Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.
- ▶ Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear seat backrests.
- ▶ Very heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom

of the rear seat backrests. When the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer seat belts in the opposite buckle.

## Lashing eyes in the cargo area

### General information

Attach auxiliary materials to secure the cargo such as lashing straps, tensioning straps, draw straps, or cargo nets to the lashing eyes.

### Overview



The lashing eyes are located in the luggage compartment.

## Multifunction hook

### General information

Depending on the equipment, a multifunction hook is located on the left and right side in the cargo area.

### Safety information



#### Warning

Improper use of the multifunction hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about, e.g., during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects from

the multifunction hooks. Only transport heavy luggage in the cargo area if it has been appropriately secured.

## Net

Small objects can be stowed in the net on the left side.

## Through-loading system

### Principle

The cargo area can be enlarged by folding down the rear seat backrests.

### General information

The rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 40–20–40. The right rear seat backrest and the center section can be folded down separately. The left rear seat backrest can be folded down together with the center section.

The rear seat backrests can be folded down from the cargo area. The center section can be separately folded down from the rear.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

There is a danger of jamming with folding down the rear seat backrests. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear seat backrest and the of the head restraint is clear prior to folding down.

#### **Warning**

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo can be thrown about the car's interior; for instance, in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after folding it back.

#### **Warning**

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat setting or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible and necessary, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

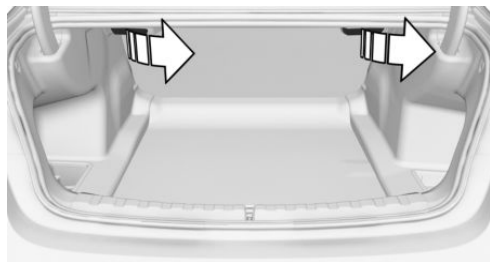
#### **Warning**

When folding down the rear seat backrest, vehicle components or body parts may become trapped. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear seat backrest including head restraint is clear when folding down.



## Folding down the rear seat backrest

### From the cargo area



Pull the corresponding lever in the cargo area to release the rear seat backrest.

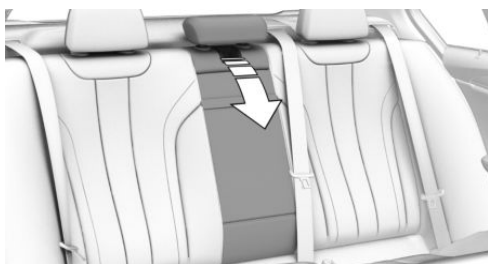
- ▷ Left lever: fold down the left and middle rear seat backrest.
- ▷ Right lever: fold down the right rear seat backrest.

## Folding back the rear seat backrest

Return the rear seat backrest to the seat position and engage it.

### Folding down middle section

1. Fold down the center head restraint.
2. Pull lever and fold the center section forward.





# BMW M2 Technology

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page [8](#).

## High-performance engine

### General information

With a displacement of 3 liters, the high-performance engine generates a maximum output of 453 hp and a maximum torque of 406 lb ft/550 Nm.

With its spontaneous response characteristics, a speed range of wide utility results. The maximum RPM is 7,200 rpm and is electronically controlled. Because of the high engine dynamics, the maximum RPM with the vehicle stationary is reduced.

### Warm-up

During the engine warm-up phase, the high-performance engine has a somewhat rougher running behavior because of the emission controls.

During the engine warm-up phase, the cold start occurs at an increased idle speed, which leads to increased acoustics of the exhaust system.

Additional information:

Tachometer, refer to page [143](#).

Engine oil temperature, refer to page [144](#).

## Compound brake

### General information

The high-performance brake system has perforated compound brake disks.

Due to the specific design, temporary function-related noise may occur after an extended minor load.

The function-related noises have no effect on the performance, operational reliability, and durability of the brake.

### Correct braking

To prevent function-related noises, depress the brakes hard a few times in regular intervals. Ensure that the traffic situation permits the braking.

With moisture on the brake disks, the brake system may be operated dry to prevent noise.

## Drivetrain

With this vehicle, particular value was placed on the direct connection from engine to the drivetrain. Due to the torsionally rigid design of the drivetrain, as is typical in a sports car, the transmission of the torque also gives acoustic feedback.

When there are load changes, this may result in clicking noises. The clicking noises do not impair the operation or the service life of the components.



# Things to remember when driving

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## Break-in procedures

### General information

Moving parts need to work together smoothly.

The following instructions will help you to achieve a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of accident. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.

## Engine, transmission, and axle drive

### Up to 600 miles/1,000 km

Drive at varying engine and road speeds, but do not exceed 5000 rpm and 106 mph/170 km/h.

Avoid full throttle or kickdown under all circumstances.

### From 600 miles/1,000 km to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at varying engine and road speeds, but do not exceed 6000 rpm and 130 mph/210 km/h.

Avoid full load in gears 1 to 3.

### At 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Have break-in service maintenance performed.

### Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand new.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

### Brake system

For M Compound brake:

M Compound brake disks and brake pads must be run in to avoid possible brake noise. Drive cautiously for the first approx. 300 miles/500 km.

### Clutch

The function of the clutch reaches its optimal level only after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

### Following part replacement

Observe the break-in procedures again if components mentioned above are replaced.

## General driving notes

### Closing the trunk lid

#### Safety information

##### **Warning**

An open trunk lid protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other road users or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not drive with the trunk lid open.

### Driving with the trunk lid open

If the vehicle still needs to be driven with the trunk lid open:

- ▶ Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- ▶ Greatly increase the blower output.
- ▶ Drive moderately.
- ▶ Fasten the trunk lid, e.g., with a tensioning belt.

### Ice on window glass

##### **NOTICE**

The window will be lowered slightly when pulling on the door handle. In the event of frost, the window may be frozen solid and may not be able to be lowered. There is a risk of damage to property. When pulling on the door handle, make sure that the window is lowered. If necessary, remove snow and ice from the window. Do not open the door with force.

### Hot exhaust system

##### **Warning**

High temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust system, while driving. Contact with the exhaust system can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch the hot exhaust system, including the exhaust pipe.

##### **Warning**

If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of fire and an injury hazard. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts while driving, in Neutral or during parking.

### Exhaust gas particulate filter

#### Principle

The exhaust gas particulate filter collects soot particles. The soot particles are burned at high temperatures to clean the exhaust gas particulate filter as necessary.

#### General information

During several minutes of cleaning the following may occur:

- ▶ Temporarily, the engine may run less smoothly.
- ▶ A somewhat higher RPM is necessary to reach usual power development.

- ▷ A slight smoke formation coming from the exhaust system, even after the engine is switched off.
- ▷ Noises, such as those caused by the radiator fan running, even several minutes after the engine is switched off.

Overrun of the radiator fan for several minutes is normal even after short trips.

## Vehicle laminated glass

The vehicle laminated glass provides complete protection against the harmful effects of ultra-violet radiation on the skin.

## Mobile radio in the vehicle

### **Warning**

Vehicle electronics and mobile communication devices can influence one another. There is radiation due to the transmission operations of mobile communication devices. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. If possible, in the car's interior only use mobile communication devices, such as mobile phones, with a direct connection to an external antenna or the Personal eSIM in order to prevent mutual interference and to deflect radiation from the vehicle interior.

## Aquaplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as aquaplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

## Driving through water

### General information

When driving through water, follow the following:

- ▷ Only drive through when the combustion engine is running.
- ▷ Prevent the combustion engine from shutting down, e.g., by deactivating Auto Start/Stop.
- ▷ Drive through calm water only.
- ▷ Drive through water only up to a maximum height of 9.8 inches/25 cm.
- ▷ Drive through water at a maximum of walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

### Safety information

#### **NOTICE**

When driving too quickly through deep water, the water can penetrate the engine compartment, the electrical system, or the transmission. There is a risk of damage to property. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.

## Braking safely

### General information

The vehicle is equipped with an Antilock Braking System as a standard feature.

Perform emergency braking in situations that require such. To achieve the best possible brake boosting, do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal during full braking.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering movement.

The pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that the Antilock Braking System is in its active mode.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake disks can emit function-related noises. However, function-related noises have no effect on the performance and operational reliability of the brake.

## Objects in the travel path of the pedals

### **Warning**

Objects in the driver's footwell can limit the pedal travel or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's footwell. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

## Driving in wet conditions

In case of wet roads, exposure to road salt or in heavy rain, gently depress the brake pedal every few kilometers.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other road users.

The heat generated during braking dries brake disks and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

In this way the brake force will be available when you need it.

## Hills

### **General information**

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Other-

wise, the brake system may overheat and reduce braking effect.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by downshifting, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

### **Safety information**

#### **Warning**

Light but consistent pressure on the brake pedal can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake system failure. There is a risk of accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.

#### **Warning**

In idle state or with the drive-ready state switched off, safety functions, for instance engine braking effect, braking assistance and steering assistance, may not be available. There is a risk of accident. Do not attempt to drive in idle state or with drive-ready state switched off.

## Brake disk corrosion

Corrosion on the brake disks and contamination on the brake pads are increased by the following circumstances:

- ▶ Low mileage.
- ▶ Extended stationary periods.
- ▶ Infrequent use of the brakes.
- ▶ Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake disks will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes when braking slowly - generally this cannot be corrected.

## Condensation water under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

## Ground clearance

### ⚠ NOTICE

If the ground clearance is insufficient, e.g., curbs or underground garage entrances, contact with vehicle parts, e.g., spoiler, and the underbody may occur. There is a risk of damage to property. Ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance available.

## M Driver's Package: driving in the higher speed range

### ⚠ Warning

Damage to vehicle components can negatively impact handling at high speeds. This includes, among other things, tires, underbody and parts for improving aerodynamics. There is a risk of accident. Have damage corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Do not drive at high speeds until the damage is corrected.

## Roof bars

### General information

Roof racks are available as optional accessories.

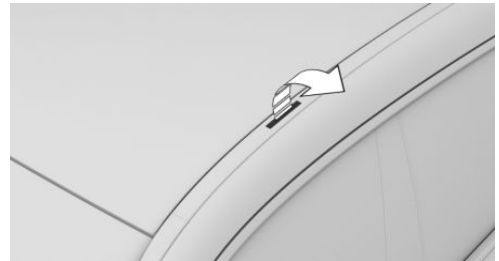
## Safety information

### ⚠ Warning

When driving with a roof load, e.g., roof bars, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher. This increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Drive with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

## Roof strip with flaps

The mounting points are located in the roof strip above the doors.



Fold the cover outward.

## Installation

Follow the assembly instructions of the roof rack.

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

## Loading

Because luggage racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- ▷ Do not exceed the approved roof/axle weights and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- ▷ Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- ▷ The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- ▷ Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- ▷ Secure the roof luggage firmly, for instance using luggage straps.
- ▷ Do not let objects project into the swiveling range of the trunk lid.
- ▷ Drive cautiously and avoid driving off and braking with jerky movements or fast cornering.

## Driving on racetracks

### **Warning**

The vehicle is not designed for use in M Sport or motorsport-like competition. There is a risk of accident. Do not use the vehicle for M Sport or motorsport-like competitions.

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. Use of the vehicle in M Sport or motor sport type competition is an improper use of the vehicle and may affect your warranty coverage. Please consult the "New Vehicle Limited Warranty" Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

When driving on a racetrack, increase the duration of the load slowly.

The standard brake linings and the wear indicators are not designed for racetrack operation.

# Saving fuel

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## Reducing fuel consumption

### Principle

The vehicle contains advanced technologies for the reduction of consumption and emission values.

There are some actions you can take to change your fuel consumption and environmental impact:

- ▶ Set M Engine Dynamics Control to "EFFICIENT" program.
- ▶ Set the Drivelogic program to D1.
- ▶ Remove unnecessary cargo from the vehicle.
- ▶ Remove attachments after use, e.g., a rear carrier.
- ▶ Close the windows and glass sunroof while driving.
- ▶ Check the tire pressure regularly and increase it as necessary.
- ▶ Switch off the engine if the vehicle is to remain stationary for a longer period.
- ▶ Drive proactively and let the vehicle coast more often.
- ▶ Deactivate functions that are not required, e.g., rear window heating.
- ▶ Have the vehicle serviced regularly.



# Refueling

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page [8](#).

## Follow the following when refueling

### General information

Follow the fuel recommendation prior to refueling.

When refueling, hook the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Lifting up the filler nozzle during refueling causes:

- ▶ Premature switching off.
- ▶ Reduced return of the fuel vapors.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Make sure that the fuel cap is closed properly after refueling, otherwise the emissions warning light may illuminate.

Follow safety regulations posted at the filling station.

Additional information:

Fuel quality, refer to page [287](#).

## Safety information

### NOTICE

With a range below 30 miles/50 km, the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

### NOTICE

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid overfilling.

## Fuel cap

### General information

If the fuel filler cap is not fitted correctly, the emissions indicator light illuminates on the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Indicator/warning lights, refer to page [136](#).

## Safety information

### Warning

The retaining strap of the fuel cap can be jammed and crushed during closing. The cap cannot be correctly closed. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Pay attention that



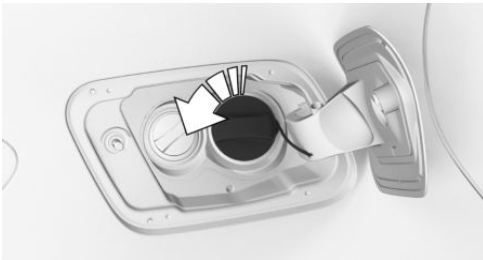
the retaining strap is not jammed or crushed when closing the cap.

## Opening

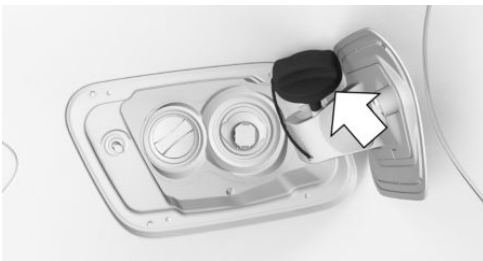
1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



## Closing

1. Fit the fuel cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Press on the fuel filler flap until it engages.

## Emergency unlocking

It may be necessary in certain situations to unlock the fuel filler flap manually, for instance with an electrical malfunction.

Have the fuel filler flap unlocked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.



# Wheels and tires

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## Tire pressure

### General information

The tire condition and tire pressure influence the following:

- ▶ The service life of the tires.
- ▶ Driving safety.
- ▶ Driving comfort.
- ▶ Fuel consumption.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

A tire with too little or no tire inflation pressure may heat up significantly and sustain damage. This will have a negative impact on aspects of handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, for instance twice a month and before a long trip.

## Tire pressure specifications

### In the tire pressure table

The tire pressure table, refer to page 258, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for given tire sizes at ambient temperature. The

tire inflation pressure specifications apply to the tire sizes approved by the vehicle manufacturer for the corresponding vehicle types.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- ▶ Tire sizes of the vehicle.
- ▶ Maximum speed for driving.

### On the control display

The current tire inflation pressure values for the mounted tires can be displayed on the control display.

The current tire inflation pressure value is located on each tire.

## Checking the tire pressure

### General information

The tires heat up while driving. The tire pressure increases with the tire temperature.

Tires have a natural, consistent tire pressure loss.

The displays of inflation devices may under-read by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

### Checking via tire inflation pressure specifications in tire pressure table

1. Determine the intended tire inflation pressure levels for the mounted tires.
2. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, using a pressure gage, for example.
3. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.
4. Make sure that all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table only relate to cold

tires or tires at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure levels when the tires are cold, i.e.:

- ▶ A distance traveled of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.
- ▶ If the vehicle has not moved again for at least two hours after a trip.

If equipped with an emergency wheel: check the tire pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly and correct if necessary.

Checking using the tire inflation pressure specifications on the control display

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
5. Check whether the current tire inflation pressure levels deviate from the intended tire pressure value.
6. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.

The display of current tire pressure on the control display may be restricted when the vehicle is stationary. After a short drive, the tire pressure is updated.

After correcting the tire pressure

If equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitor, the corrected tire pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the tire settings are correct. With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the control display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM).

If equipped with a flat tire monitor, reinitialize the flat tire monitor.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, follow the tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire pressure table and adjust as necessary.



The tire inflation pressure specifications can also be found on the tire pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

Tire pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

M2

| Tire size                                 |          | Pressure specifications in bar/PSI                                                                                                                                         |  |
|-------------------------------------------|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires |          | <br> |  |
| 275/35 R 19 100 V XL M+S                  | 2.2 / 32 | 2.2 / 32                                                                                                                                                                   |  |
| Front: 275/35 ZR 19 100 Y XL              | 2.2 / 32 | -                                                                                                                                                                          |  |
| Rear: 285/30 ZR 20 99 Y XL                | -        | 2.2 / 32                                                                                                                                                                   |  |
| Front: 285/30 ZR 20 99 Y XL               | 2.2 / 32 | -                                                                                                                                                                          |  |

| Tire size | Pressure specifications in bar/PSI |  |
|-----------|------------------------------------|--|
|-----------|------------------------------------|--|

|                            |   |          |
|----------------------------|---|----------|
| Rear: 295/25 ZR 21 96 Y XL | - | 2.5 / 36 |
|----------------------------|---|----------|

|                             |          |   |
|-----------------------------|----------|---|
| F: 275/35 R 19 100 V XL M+S | 2.2 / 32 | - |
|-----------------------------|----------|---|

|                            |   |          |
|----------------------------|---|----------|
| R: 285/30 R 20 99 V XL M+S | - | 2.2 / 32 |
|----------------------------|---|----------|

## Tire inflation pressures at maximum speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

### Warning

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.

For speeds over 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

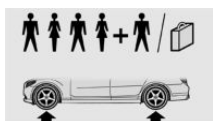
## Tire pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

### M2

Without M Driver's Package:

| Tire size | Pressure specifications in bar/PSI |  |
|-----------|------------------------------------|--|
|-----------|------------------------------------|--|

Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires



|                          |          |          |
|--------------------------|----------|----------|
| 275/35 R 19 100 V XL M+S | 2.4 / 35 | 2.6 / 38 |
|--------------------------|----------|----------|

| Tire size | Pressure specifications in bar/PSI |  |
|-----------|------------------------------------|--|
|-----------|------------------------------------|--|

|                              |          |   |
|------------------------------|----------|---|
| Front: 275/35 ZR 19 100 Y XL | 2.3 / 33 | - |
|------------------------------|----------|---|

|                            |   |          |
|----------------------------|---|----------|
| Rear: 285/30 ZR 20 99 Y XL | - | 2.6 / 38 |
|----------------------------|---|----------|

|                             |          |   |
|-----------------------------|----------|---|
| Front: 285/30 ZR 20 99 Y XL | 2.6 / 38 | - |
|-----------------------------|----------|---|

|                            |   |          |
|----------------------------|---|----------|
| Rear: 295/25 ZR 21 96 Y XL | - | 2.9 / 42 |
|----------------------------|---|----------|

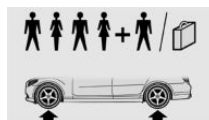
|                             |          |   |
|-----------------------------|----------|---|
| F: 275/35 R 19 100 V XL M+S | 2.4 / 35 | - |
|-----------------------------|----------|---|

|                            |   |          |
|----------------------------|---|----------|
| R: 285/30 R 20 99 V XL M+S | - | 2.7 / 39 |
|----------------------------|---|----------|

With M Driver's Package:

| Tire size | Pressure specifications in bar/PSI |  |
|-----------|------------------------------------|--|
|-----------|------------------------------------|--|

Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires



|                          |          |          |
|--------------------------|----------|----------|
| 275/35 R 19 100 V XL M+S | 2.4 / 35 | 2.6 / 38 |
|--------------------------|----------|----------|

|                              |          |   |
|------------------------------|----------|---|
| Front: 275/35 ZR 19 100 Y XL | 2.7 / 39 | - |
|------------------------------|----------|---|

|                            |   |          |
|----------------------------|---|----------|
| Rear: 285/30 ZR 20 99 Y XL | - | 3.0 / 44 |
|----------------------------|---|----------|

|                             |          |   |
|-----------------------------|----------|---|
| Front: 285/30 ZR 20 99 Y XL | 3.0 / 44 | - |
|-----------------------------|----------|---|

|                            |   |          |
|----------------------------|---|----------|
| Rear: 295/25 ZR 21 96 Y XL | - | 3.3 / 48 |
|----------------------------|---|----------|

|                             |          |   |
|-----------------------------|----------|---|
| F: 275/35 R 19 100 V XL M+S | 2.4 / 35 | - |
|-----------------------------|----------|---|

|                            |   |          |
|----------------------------|---|----------|
| R: 285/30 R 20 99 V XL M+S | - | 2.7 / 39 |
|----------------------------|---|----------|

## Tire marking

### Tire size

245/45 R 18 96 Y  
245: nominal width in mm  
45: cross-sectional relationship in %  
R: radial tire code  
18: rim diameter in inches  
96: load bearing capacity  
Y: speed code letter  
ZR tires: reinforced radial tire for speeds exceeding 150 mph/240 km/h

### Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved. Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver door B-pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

### Speed letter

| Designation | Maximum speed          |
|-------------|------------------------|
| Q           | up to 100 mph/160 km/h |
| R           | up to 106 mph/170 km/h |
| S           | up to 112 mph/180 km/h |
| T           | up to 118 mph/190 km/h |
| H           | up to 131 mph/210 km/h |
| V           | up to 150 mph/240 km/h |
| W           | up to 167 mph/270 km/h |
| Y           | up to 186 mph/300 km/h |
| (Y)         | above 186 mph/300 km/h |

### Tire Identification Number

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 0123  
xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand  
xxx: tire size and tire design  
0123: tire age  
Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

### Tire age

### Recommendation

Regardless of the tire tread depth, replace tires at least every 6 years.

### Production date

You can find the tire production date on the tire sidewall.

| Designation  | Production date  |
|--------------|------------------|
| DOT ... 0123 | 1st week of 2023 |

### Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.  
E.g.: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

### DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear  
Traction AA A B C  
Temperature A B C  
All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. E.g., a tire graded 150



would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

## Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

## Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.



### Warning

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

## M+S

Winter tires, as well as all-season tires with better winter performance than summer tires, can be identified by the M+S marking on the tire side wall.

## Tire tread

### Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.12 in/3 mm, otherwise there is an increased risk of aquaplaning.

### Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.16 in/4 mm, as such tires are less suitable for winter driving conditions.

### Minimum tread depth



Distributed over the tire circumference are the tire manufacturer's wear indicators with a height of at least 0.06 in/1.6 mm, which serve as an indicator of tire tread wear.

The positions of the wear indicators are marked on the tire sidewall with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Irrespective of the wear indicators, observe the statutory regulations on the minimum tread depth.

## Tire damage

### General information

Check your tires regularly for damage, foreign bodies lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if the vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or another vehicle malfunction:

- Unusual vibrations.
- Unusual tire or running noises.
- Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.
- Uneven wear pattern, e.g., increased wear in the area of the tire shoulder.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for instance:

- Driving over curbs.
- Road damage.
- Tire pressure too low.
- Vehicle overloading.
- Incorrect tire storage.

## Safety information

### Warning

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. To do so, drive carefully to an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have vehicle towed or transported as needed. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.

### Warning

Tires can become damaged by driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs or road damage, at high speed. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There may be a risk of accidents and risk of damage to property. If possible, avoid driving over objects or road conditions that may damage tires, or drive over them slowly and carefully.

## Exchanging wheels and tires

### Mounting and wheel balancing

Have the wheel mounted and balanced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Approved wheels and tires

#### General information

Only certain wheel/tire combinations are suitable depending on vehicle and equipment. The vehicle manufacturer determines wheel/



tire combinations on the basis of the following criteria:

- ▷ Tire size, e.g., tire width, aspect ratio.
- ▷ Wheel size, e.g., rim diameter, offset.

Ask an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop about wheels and tires that are suitable for the vehicle as well as special equipment.

## Safety information

### **Warning**

Wheels and tires that are not suitable for the vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you use only wheels and tires that have been approved as suitable for the vehicle type.

### **Warning**

Mounted steel wheels can cause technical problems, for instance unexpected loosening of the lug bolts and damage to the brake disks. There is a risk of accident. Do not mount steel wheels.

### **Warning**

Unsuitable wheel/tire combinations will impair vehicle handling and a number of system functions, such as the Antilock Braking System or Dynamic Stability Control. There is a risk of accident. The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you use only wheels and tires that have been approved as suitable for the vehicle type. Following tire damage, have the original wheel/tire combination re-mounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

## Recommended tire brands



Tire types are developed for each vehicle and optimized specifically for the individual requirements of that vehicle, e.g.:

- ▷ Handling.
- ▷ Comfort.
- ▷ Noise characteristics.

Specially developed tires are marked with a star on the tire sidewall. After replacing wheels and tires, the vehicle manufacturer recommends using star-marked tires again. The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you use tires of the same make and tread design.

## New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand new.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

## Retreaded tires

### **Warning**

Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is a risk of accident. The manufacturer of the vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.



## Winter tires

### General information



Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Winter tires can be identified by the mountain and snowflake icon, as well as the M+S marking on the tire sidewall.

So-called all-season tires with M+S marking but without mountain and snowflake icon have better winter properties than summer tires.

As a rule, all-season tires do not perform the same as winter tires.

### Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for winter tires, attach an info sign showing the permissible maximum speed in the driver's field of vision. The info label is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

When driving on winter tires, observe the speed limit for winter tires. Do not exceed this limit.

### Wheel change between axles

#### **Warning**

A wheel change between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles can cause damage to the tires and the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Do not rotate the tires between the

axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles.

### Storing tires

#### Tire pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.

#### Storage

- ▷ Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.
- ▷ Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease, and solvents.
- ▷ Do not leave the tires in plastic bags.
- ▷ Remove dirt from wheels or tires.

## Repairing a flat tire

### Safety precautions

- ▷ Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from road traffic.
- ▷ Turn on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- ▷ As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ If necessary, set up the hazard triangle or hazard warning lights at an appropriate distance.



## Sport tires

### General information

The vehicle can be fitted with sport tires, which have been optimized for use on a racetrack in dry conditions.

These track tires are made from an optimized material mixture specially derived from motorsport. In addition, the tire tread is partly reduced to create a larger contact area with the road surface. These adjustments can increase driving dynamics such as steering behavior, precision, or road grip.

Additional information:

- ▶ At an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▶ On the website of the respective tire manufacturer.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

At temperatures below 32°F/0°C, sport tires can become damaged, for instance torn and broken. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Do not move, mount, or drive on sport tires at temperatures below 32°F/0°C.

#### **Warning**

When driving with sport tires on wet roads or race tracks, driving safety may be impaired in critical situations such as aquaplaning. There is a risk of accident. Drive at a suitable speed and with driving stability control systems enabled, e.g., Dynamic Stability Control.

#### **Warning**

At temperatures below 59 °F/15 °C, handling characteristics can be impaired when driving with sport tires, e.g., a sudden loss of traction. There is a risk of accident. At temperatures below 59 °F/15 °C, drive at a suitable speed and with driving stability control systems enabled, e.g., Dynamic Stability Control.

### Storage

If the sport tires are not used for a long period of time, we recommend removing the wheels from the vehicle.

Store wheels or sport tires in a clean, dry, and dark place at temperatures above 32 °F/0 °C.

### Use on the road

The sport tires meet the legal regulations for use in public road traffic.

After being used on a racetrack, the sport tires may no longer be suitable for road traffic. Therefore, after they have been used on a racetrack, check the sport tires against the legal regulations for use in public road traffic, for instance the minimum tread depth.

### Use on a racetrack

#### General information

Always check the sport tires for damage, foreign bodies lodged in the tread, and wear before using them on a racetrack.

Check the tire pressures when the tires are cold.

Bring the sport tires to temperature with a moderate, modified driving style when using them on the racetrack.

#### Intensive use

After an extended period of intensive driving on a racetrack and driving over curbs or leav-

ing the roadway, the sport tires can become damaged.

Check the sport tires for damage, foreign bodies lodged in the tread, and tread wear. The wheel must be removed in order to check the outside and inside of the sport tires. Have sport tires checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Tire pressure

### General information

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly and correct it if necessary, taking the regulations for use on the road or a racetrack into account. The tires heat up while driving. The tire pressure increases with the tire temperature.

### Tire pressure specifications

The tire pressure table contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for given tire sizes at ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure specifications apply to the tire sizes approved by the vehicle manufacturer for the corresponding vehicle types.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- ▶ Tire sizes of the vehicle.
- ▶ Maximum speed at which the vehicle is driven.

## Tire repair set

### Principle

With the tire repair set, minor tire damage can be sealed temporarily to enable continued driving.

### General information

- ▶ The filled in tire sealant closes the damage from the inside when it hardens.
- ▶ Follow the instructions on using the tire repair set found on the compressor and sealant bottle.
- ▶ The use of a tire repair set can be ineffective if the tire puncture measures above approx. 0.16 in/4 mm.
- ▶ Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated the tire. Remove foreign objects only when they are visibly protruding from the tire.
- ▶ The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

### Overview

#### Storage

Depending on the equipment, storage for the tire repair set is provided as follows:

- ▶ In the cargo area under the cargo floor panel.
- ▶ In the cargo area on the left or right side.
- ▶ In the cargo area behind a side trim panel.

#### Sealant bottle and filler hose



- 1 Sealant bottle
- 2 Sealant bottle outlet
- 3 Filler hose
- 4 Sealant bottle connection
- 5 Wheel valve connection



## Compressor



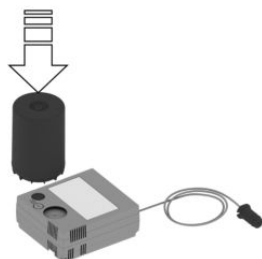
- 1 Compressor
- 2 Tire pressure display
- 3 Pressure reducing valve button
- 4 Sealant bottle mount
- 5 Connector for socket
- 6 Power switch

## Safety precautions

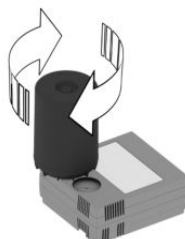
- ▶ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- ▶ Turn on the hazard warning system.
- ▶ Set the parking brake.
- ▶ Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- ▶ As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- ▶ If necessary, set up the hazard triangle or hazard warning lights at an appropriate distance.
- ▶ Remove the warning label for maximum permissible speed from the compressor and attach it in a visible location in the vehicle interior.
- ▶ Remove the warning label from the sealant bottle and stick it to the rim.

## Preparing the tire repair set

1. Insert the sealant bottle into the mount on the housing of the compressor.



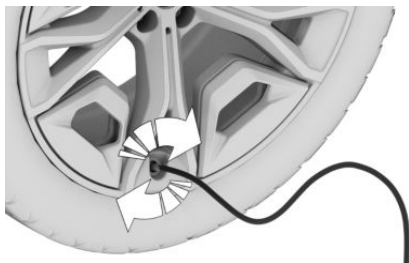
2. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise by 90° to the stop.



3. Connect the filler hose to the outlet of the sealant bottle and turn clockwise by 90° to the stop.



4. Unscrew the valve cap from the wheel and screw the connecting piece of the filler hose onto the valve.



5. With the compressor switched off, insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

## Filling the tire with sealing compound

### Safety information

#### DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

#### NOTICE

The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 minutes.

## Filling the tire with sealing compound

1. With standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.

Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill in the tire sealant and reach a tire pressure of 2.5 bar/36 psi.

While the tire is being filled with tire sealant, the tire pressure can briefly reach approx. 6 bar/87 psi. Do not turn off the compressor in this phase.



2. Switch off the compressor.

## Checking the tire pressure

Read the tire pressure on the tire pressure display of the compressor. The tire pressure must be at least 2.5 bar/36 psi.

## Tire pressure too high

If the tire pressure is too high, reduce the tire pressure with the pressure reducing valve on the compressor.

## Minimum tire inflation pressure is not reached

Do not continue driving unless a minimum tire pressure of 2.5 bar/36 psi is reached. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached

1. Pull the connector out of the socket in the vehicle interior.
2. Disconnect the hose from the sealant bottle and the valve on the wheel.
3. Screw the valve cap onto the valve.



4. Stow the tire repair set in the cargo area.
5. Immediately drive 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the tire sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

Do not exceed the speed limit of 50 mph/80 km/h.

If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

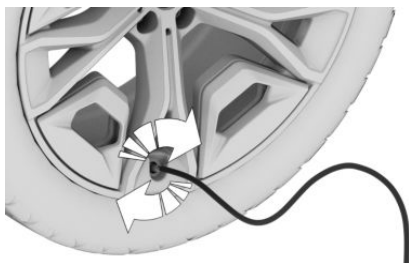
Tire sealant may spray from the damaged area during the initial wheel rotations.

## Adjusting the tire pressure

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Connect the hose directly to the compressor and turn clockwise by 90° until it audibly engages.



3. Unscrew the valve cap from the wheel and screw the connecting piece of the hose onto the valve.



4. Insert the connector into the socket in the vehicle interior.
5. Read the tire pressure on the tire pressure display of the compressor.

Do not continue driving unless a minimum tire pressure of 1.3 bar/19 psi is displayed. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

6. Correct the tire pressure to 2.5 bar/36 psi.
  - ▶ Increase tire pressure: with standby or drive-ready state turned on, turn on the compressor and let it run for a maximum of 10 minutes.
  - ▶ Reduce tire pressure: Press the pressure reducing valve button on the compressor.

## Remove and stow the tire repair set

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Pull the connector out of the socket in the vehicle interior.
3. Disconnect the hose from the compressor and the valve on the wheel.
4. Screw the valve cap onto the valve.
5. Stow the tire repair set in the cargo area.

## Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the speed limit of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Do not exceed a maximum distance travelled of 125 miles/200 km.

Re-initialize the flat tire monitor or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Replace the faulty tire and the sealant bottle of the tire repair set promptly.

Additional information:

- ▶ Flat tire monitor, refer to page [277](#).
- ▶ Tire pressure monitor, refer to page [271](#).

## System limits

If the tire cannot be made drivable, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With Tire Pressure Monitor: Using sealant can damage the air pressure sensor. In this case,

have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.

## Snow chains

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Mounting snow chains on unsuitable tires can cause the snow chains to come into contact with vehicle parts. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Only mount snow chains on tires that are designated by their manufacturer as suitable for the use of snow chains.

#### **Warning**

Insufficiently tight snow chains may damage tires and vehicle components. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

### Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the use of fine-link snow chains. Certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

For information on suitable snow chains, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Use

Use is only permitted in pairs on rear wheels equipped with the tires of the following wheel/tire sizes:

| Tire size  | Wheel size | Rim offset (IS) |
|------------|------------|-----------------|
| 275/35 R19 | 9.5J x 19  | 20              |

Information on the wheel size and rim offset is located on the inside of the wheel.

The list can also include wheel/tire sizes that are only suitable for certain models.

Information on wheels and tires approved for the vehicle can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Follow the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

If vehicle is equipped with Tire Pressure Monitor: When using snow chains, do not reset the Tire Pressure Monitor, otherwise, incorrect values may be displayed.

If vehicle is equipped with flat tire monitor: When using snow chains, do not initialize the flat tire monitor, otherwise, incorrect values may be displayed.

When driving with snow chains, if needed, briefly activate M Dynamic Mode.

### Maximum speed with snow chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

## Tire pressure monitor

### Principle

The Tire Pressure Monitor monitors the tire pressure and issues a warning if the tire pressure has dropped.

### General information

Sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and tire temperature.

Depending on the tire entered or detected, the system automatically compares the specified



nominal pressures with the current tire pressures.

If tires are being used that are not specified in the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle, such as tires with special approval, the system needs to be actively reset. The system will then take over the actual tire inflation pressures as the target pressures.

When operating the system, also note the information found in the Tire inflation pressure chapter.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 258.

## Safety information

### Warning

Incorrect entries in the tire settings can lead to incorrect target tire inflation pressure values. In this case, it cannot be guaranteed that the notification of a tire pressure loss will be reliable. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Ensure that the tire sizes of the mounted tires are displayed correctly and match the details on the tires and on the vehicle.

## Functional requirements

The following prerequisites must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable notification of a tire pressure loss is not assured:

- ▶ Every time a tire or wheel is changed, the correct details on the mounted tires must be entered in the tire settings.
- ▶ The Tire Pressure Monitor does not activate until after driving for a few minutes:
  - ▶ After a tire or wheel change.
  - ▶ After a reset, for tires with special approval.
  - ▶ After changing the tire setting.
- ▶ For tires with special approval:

- ▶ After a tire or wheel change, a reset was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
- ▶ After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, a reset was performed.
- ▶ Wheels with air pressure sensor.

## Tire settings

### General information

The tire sizes of the mounted tires can be gathered from the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle or directly on the tires.

The tire details do not need to be re-entered when the tire pressure is corrected.

For summer and winter tires, the tire details entered last are stored. After a tire or wheel change, the settings of the tire sets used last can be selected.

### Adjusting the tires

1.  Apps menu
  2. "Vehicle apps"
  3. "Vehicle status"
  4. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
  5. "Tire settings"
  6. "Tire selection"
  7. "Manual"
  8. "Tire type"
  9. Select the tire size for the rear axle.  
For tires with special approval:  
"Other tires/race track"  
Observe further proceeding in the perform a reset section.
  10. Select the maximum speed to be driven.
  11. "Save tire settings"
- The measurement of the current tire inflation pressure is started. The measurement progress is displayed.



## Status display

### Current status

The system status can be displayed on the control display, e.g., whether or not the system is active.

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Tire Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

### Current tire pressure

The current tire pressure is displayed for each tire.

The current tire inflation pressures may change during driving or depending on the outside temperature.

### Current tire temperature

The current tire temperatures are displayed.

The current tire temperatures may change while driving or due to the outside temperature.

## Tire conditions

### General information

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a text message on the control display.

Any existing messages may not be deleted if the nominal pressure is not reached after the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

### All wheels green

- ▷ The system is active and bases warnings on the target pressures.
- ▷ For tires with special approval: the system is active and bases warnings on the tire

inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

### One to four yellow wheels

A flat tire or major tire pressure loss has occurred in the indicated tires.

### Gray wheels

It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Possible causes:

- ▷ Malfunction.
- ▷ During tire inflation pressure measurement, after confirmation of the tire settings.
- ▷ For tires with special approval: a reset is performed for the system.

### For tires with special approval: performing a reset

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
5. Make sure that the tire settings are correct.  
Tire settings, refer to page [272](#).
6. Turn on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
7. Reset tire pressure: "Perform reset".
8. Drive off.

The wheels are displayed in gray and the following is displayed: "Resetting tire pressure..."

After a travel time of several minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as the predefined tire inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically while driving.

After a successfully completed reset, the wheels on the control display are shown in green and the following is displayed: "Reset successful."

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue driving the reset resumes automatically.

## Messages: for tires without special approval

### General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control may be turned on.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

### With recommended tire pressure test

#### Message

An icon with service information is shown on the control display and, if necessary, in the My BMW App.

| Icon                                                                               | Possible cause             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
|  | Leak detected on the tire. |

#### Measure

Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.

### If a tire inflation pressure check is required

#### Message

An icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

| Icon                                                                              | Possible cause                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, for instance when the tire has not been sufficiently inflated or in the case of a natural steady tire pressure loss. |

#### Measure

Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.

### If the tire inflation pressure is too low

#### Message



A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

| Icon                                                                              | Possible cause                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
|  | There is a tire pressure loss. |

#### Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a filling station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.

### If there is a significant tire pressure loss

#### Message



A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the control display.

| Icon                                                                             | Possible cause                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
|  | There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss. |

### Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Read the description on what to do in case of a flat tire.  
Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 276.

## Messages: for tires with special approval

### General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control may be turned on.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

### If a tire inflation pressure check is required

#### Message

An icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

| Icon                                                                              | Possible cause                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, e.g., the tire has not been sufficiently inflated.</p> <p>The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done.</p> <p>The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset.</p> <p>No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.</p> |

### Measure

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Perform a system reset.

### If the tire inflation pressure is too low

#### Message

 A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

| Icon                                                                                | Possible cause                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>There is a tire pressure loss.</p> <p>No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.</p> |

### Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a filling station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.
3. Perform a system reset.



## If there is a significant tire pressure loss

### Message



A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the control display.

| Icon                                                                             | Possible cause                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss.</p> <p>No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.</p> |



### Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Read the description on what to do in case of a flat tire.  
Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 276.

## Actions in the event of a flat tire

1. Identify the damaged tire.

Check the tire pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure display from a tire repair set.

For tires with special approval: when the tire pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

If no tire damage can be identified, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

2. Repair the flat tire, for instance with a tire repair set or by changing the wheel.

Using a sealing compound, for instance from the tire repair set, may damage the wheel electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

## System limits

### Temperature

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure.

The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again.

These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

### Sudden tire pressure loss

The system cannot indicate sudden and serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

### Failure performing a reset

Tires with special approval: the system will not function correctly if a reset was not performed, for example a flat tire may be indicated although the tire inflation pressures are correct.

## Malfunction

### Message



The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

## Measure

- A wheel without air pressure sensor is mounted: Have the wheels checked as needed.
- Fault caused by systems or devices with the same transmission frequency: The system automatically reactivates after leaving the area of the interference.
- For tires with special approval: the system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.
- If the Tire Pressure Monitor malfunctions: Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If the vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, the vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not

reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. The vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on the vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

## Flat tire monitor

### Principle

The flat tire monitor detects a tire pressure loss while driving and issues a warning if the tire pressure has dropped.

### General information

The system detects tire pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.



## Functional requirements

The following prerequisites must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable notification of a tire pressure loss is not assured:

- ▶ After a tire or wheel change, an initialization was carried out at the correct tire pressure.
- ▶ After the tire pressure was adjusted to a new value, an initialization was performed.

## Status display

The current status of the flat tire monitor can be displayed, e.g., whether the flat tire monitor is active.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

## Initialization required

An initialization must be performed in the following situations:

- ▶ After the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- ▶ After a tire or wheel change.

## Performing initialization

When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Flat Tire Monitor"
5. Turn on drive-ready state and do not drive off.

6. Start the initialization with: "Perform reset"
7. Drive off.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving continues.

## Messages

### General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is turned on, if needed.

### Safety information



#### Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

### Indication of a flat tire



A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

| Icon | Possible cause                                      |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------|
|      | There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss. |



### Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Read the description on what to do in case of a flat tire.

## Actions in the event of a flat tire

### 1. Identify the damaged tire.

To do this, check the tire pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure display from a tire repair set.

When the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the flat tire monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

If tire damage cannot be identified, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### 2. Repair the flat tire, for instance with a tire repair set or by changing the wheel.

## System limits

The system may be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- ▶ A natural, even tire pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.
- ▶ Sudden and serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
- ▶ The system has not been initialized.
- ▶ When driving on a snowy or slippery road.
- ▶ Sporty driving style: slip on traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- ▶ When driving with snow chains.

## Changing wheels/tires

### General information

When a tire repair set is used, the wheel does not always need to be changed immediately in the event of a breakdown when there is tire pressure loss.

If necessary, a suitable wheel change tool, e.g., a jack, is available as an accessory from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Safety information

### **Warning**

The jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety precautions are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling if the jack tips over. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. When the vehicle is raised with the jack, do not lie under the vehicle and do not switch on the drive-ready state.

### **Warning**

Supports such as wooden blocks under the jack reduce the load-carrying capacity of the jack to bear weight. The load-carrying capacity of the wooden blocks may be exceeded and the vehicle may tip over. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not place supports under the jack.

### **Warning**

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use, e.g., changing from summer to winter tires. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only use the jack to change an emergency or spare wheel in the event of a breakdown.

### **Warning**

The jack may slip on soft, uneven, or slippery ground, e.g., snow, ice, tiles, etc. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, slip-resistant surface.

**Warning**

The jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the jack.

**Warning**

When the jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When cranking up the jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel well.

**Warning**

A vehicle that is raised on a jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral effort on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**NOTICE**

Using an impact wrench to loosen or tighten the wheel lock bolt can damage the wheel lock bolt. There is a risk of damage to property. Only use a lug wrench to loosen and tighten the wheel lock bolt.

## Securing the vehicle against rolling away

### General information

The vehicle manufacturer recommends to additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away when changing a wheel.

### On a level surface



Place wheel chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel to be changed.

### On a slight downhill gradient



If you need to change a wheel on a slight downhill grade, place chocks and other suitable objects, for instance rocks, under the proper side of the wheels of both the front and rear axles to block the car from rolling downhill.



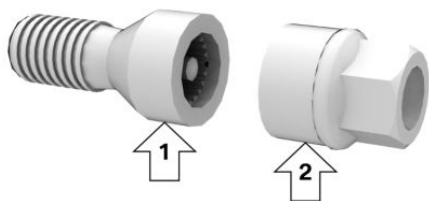
## Lug bolt lock

### Principle

The wheel lug bolts have a special coding. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

### Overview

The adapter of the lug bolt lock is in the on-board vehicle tool kit or in a storage compartment close to the onboard vehicle tool kit.



- ▷ Lug lock bolt, arrow 1.
- ▷ Adapter, arrow 2.

### Unscrewing

1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt.
2. Unscrew the lug lock bolt.
3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

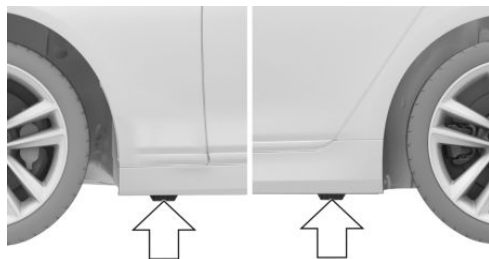
### Screwing on

1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the wheel lug bolt.
2. Screw on the lug lock bolt. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
3. Remove the adapter and stow it after screwing on the lug bolt.

## Safety precautions

- ▷ Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from road traffic.
- ▷ Turn on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- ▷ Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.
- ▷ As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ If necessary, set up the hazard triangle or hazard warning lights at an appropriate distance.
- ▷ Depending on vehicle equipment, remove the wheel change set and, if necessary, the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- ▷ Secure the vehicle additionally against rolling away.
- ▷ Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

## Jacking points



The jacking points are located at the indicated positions.

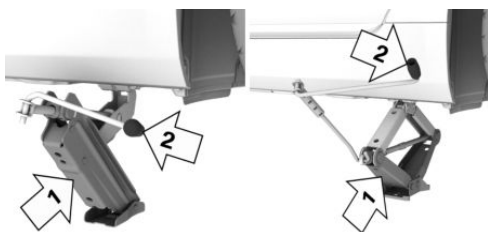


## Jacking up the vehicle

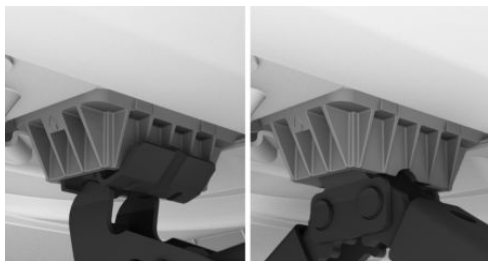
### Warning

Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and do not change this position while using the jack.

1. Hold the vehicle jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the jack crank handle or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.



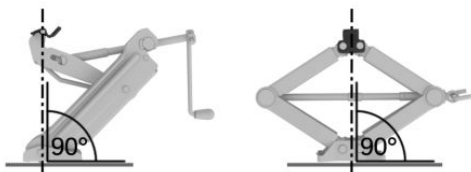
2. Insert the jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.



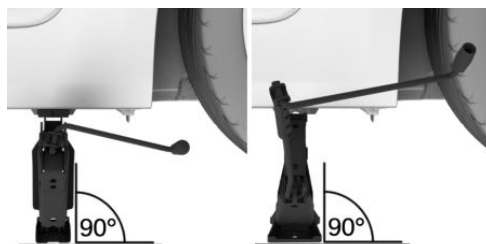
3. Extend the jack by turning the jack crank handle or lever clockwise.



4. Take your hand away from the jack as soon as the jack is under load and continue turning the jack crank handle or lever with one hand.
5. Make sure that the car jack foot extends vertically and is at a right angle beneath the jacking point.



6. Make sure that the car jack foot is vertical and at a right angle beneath the jacking point after extending the vehicle jack.



7. Crank the vehicle up until the vehicle jack has the entire surface on the ground and the relevant wheel is maximum 1.2 inches/3 cm above ground.

## Mounting a wheel

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

When non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the ac-

companying lug bolts may have to be used as well.

4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
5. Turn the jack crank handle counterclockwise to retract the jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the jack and stow it securely.

### After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the faulty wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.
3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Re-initialize the flat tire monitor or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.
5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Drive to the nearest authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, then have the damaged tire renewed.

# Engine compartment

## Vehicle features and options

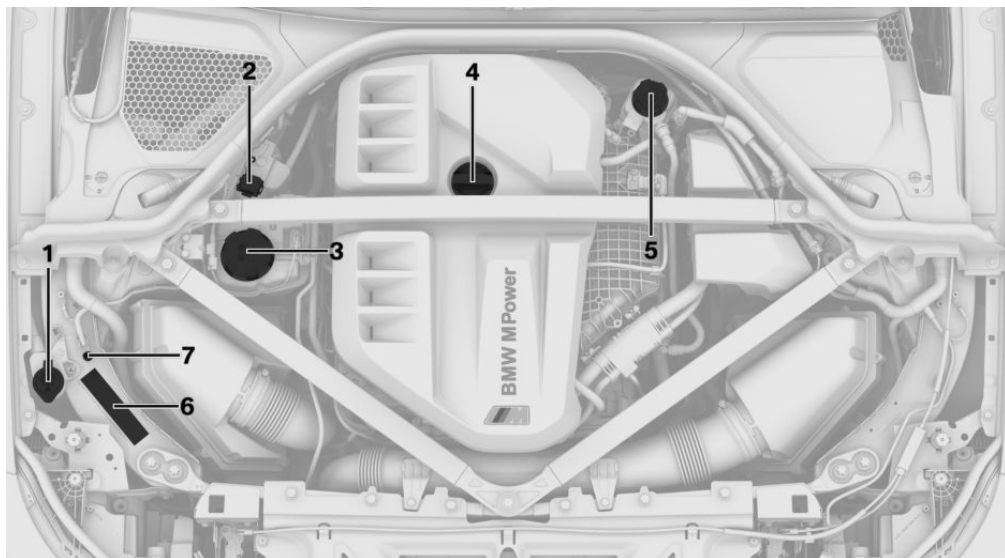
This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently

available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## Overview



- 1 Filler neck for washer fluid
- 2 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal
- 3 Engine coolant
- 4 Oil filler neck

- 5 Coolant, auxiliary cooling
- 6 Vehicle identification number
- 7 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal

## Hood

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage vehicle components and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that, in the effort to avoid such risks, work in the engine compartment be performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

#### **Warning**

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, for instance the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

#### **Warning**

There are protruding parts, for instance locking hooks, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.

#### **Warning**

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.

#### **Warning**

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of hood is clear during opening and closing.

#### **NOTICE**

Folded-out wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

#### **NOTICE**

When the hood is closed, it must engage on both sides. Pressing again can damage the hood. There is a risk of damage to property. Open the hood again and then close it energetically. Avoid pressing again.

### Opening hood

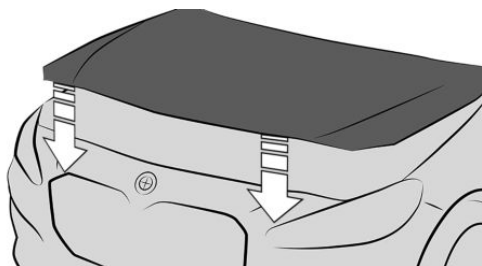
1. Pull the lever, arrow 1.  
Hood is unlocked.



2. Release the lever and pull it again, arrow 2.  
Hood can be opened.
3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.



## Closing the hood



Energetically close the hood from approx.  
20 in/50 cm.

The hood must engage on both sides.

# Operating materials

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## Fuel recommendation

### General information

Depending on the region, many filling stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter, for instance helps make a cold start easier.

### Gasoline

#### General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fill up using fuel with a maximum ethanol content of 10 %, e.g., E10.

The power and consumption specifications refer to operating with RON 98 E10 fuel

When using minimum quality AKI 87 fuel, there may be knocking noises as well as driving and acoustic abnormalities. These have no effect on the engine service life.

## Safety information

### **Caution**

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for additional maintenance.

### **NOTICE**

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. Furthermore, the catalytic converter is permanently damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- ▷ Leaded gasoline.
- ▷ Metallic additives, for instance manganese or iron.

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**NOTICE**

Fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality can compromise engine function or cause engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality.

**NOTICE**

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use fuels with a higher ethanol content than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.

## Recommended gas quality

BMW recommends AKI 93.

## Minimum fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 91.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high external temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

**BMW M recommends** 

# Engine oil

## General information

The engine oil consumption and engine oil properties depend on the driving style and operating conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling by taking a detailed measurement.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for instance:

- ▷ Sporty driving style.
- ▷ Break-in of the engine.
- ▷ Idle operation of the engine.
- ▷ With use of engine oil types that are classified as not suitable.

Different Check Control messages are shown on the control display depending on the engine oil level and engine oil properties.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having the engine oil changed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Safety information

**NOTICE**

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

**NOTICE**

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is excess engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.



**⚠ NOTICE**

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. It is recommended that you do not exceed the service intervals indicated in the vehicle.

## Electronic oil measurement

### General information

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

- ▷ Monitoring.
- ▷ Detailed measurement.

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, for instance when cornering aggressively, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

### Monitoring

#### Principle

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and can be shown on the control display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

#### Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

#### Displaying the engine oil level

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

### System limits

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measured value. In this case, the measured value for the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

### Detailed measurement

#### Principle

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

#### General information

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

#### Functional requirements

- ▷ Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- ▷ The drive-ready state is switched on by pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ The engine is at operating temperature.
- ▷ Selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.

#### Performing a detailed measurement

1.  Apps menu
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Engine oil level"
5. "Oil level measurement"
6. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.



## Adding engine oil

### General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The top-up quantity is indicated in the message shown on the control display.

Only add suitable types of engine oil.

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Operating materials, for instance oils, greases, coolants, fuels, can contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Follow the instructions on the containers. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with operating materials. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

#### **NOTICE**

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

#### **NOTICE**

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is excess engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page [284](#).

### Adding engine oil

1. Opening the hood.  
Opening, refer to page [285](#).
2. Open the lid counterclockwise.



3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the lid.

### Engine oil types to add

#### General information

The engine oil grade is critical for the service life of the engine.

Only add with the types of engine oil which are listed.

### Safety information

#### **NOTICE**

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use oil additives.

**⚠ NOTICE**

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of damage to property. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil specification.

**Suitable engine oil types**

When topping up engine oil, the following oil specification applies:

**Gasoline engine**

BMW Longlife-01 FE.

**Alternative engine oil types**

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

**Oil specification**

API SL.

API SM.

API SN.

**Viscosity grades**

When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has a suitable viscosity grade. The suitable viscosity grade is indicated on a sign in the engine compartment.

**Viscosity grades**

SAE 0W-30.

More information about suitable oil specifications and engine oil viscosity grades can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**BMW recommends  
Original BMW Engine Oil.**

**Coolant****General information**

Coolant consists of water and coolant additive. Not all commercially available coolant additives are suitable for the vehicle. The vehicle manufacturer recommends using coolant with the BMW LC-18 specification. Do not mix coolant additives of different colors. Use a 50:50 mixing ratio of water to coolant additive. Information on suitable coolant additives can be provided by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**Safety information****⚠ Warning**

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.

**⚠ Warning**

Additives are harmful and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.

## Coolant level

### General information

The coolant may be overfilled in the coolant reservoir when the vehicle is delivered from the factory. Run longer to achieve the normal coolant level.

The nominal coolant level is indicated by the maximum mark in the filler neck of the coolant reservoir.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 284.

### Checking the coolant level

1. Let the engine cool down.
2. Opening the hood.  
Opening, refer to page 285.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. The coolant level is correct when it is just below the maximum mark in the filler neck.



6. Close the lid.

### Adding coolant

1. Let the engine cool down.
2. Opening the hood.  
Opening, refer to page 285.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.

4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified fill level; do not overfill.
6. Close the lid.
7. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

### Disposal



Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

## Washer fluid

### General information

All spray nozzles are supplied from one tank.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity: 0.4 US gal/2 liters.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Some types of antifreeze can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and an injury hazard. Follow the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

United States: the washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.

### **Warning**

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.

### **NOTICE**

Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the car wash. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.

### **NOTICE**

Mixing different windshield washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washer system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not mix different windshield washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixture ratios provided on the containers.

## Overview



The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

## Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer fluid concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5 °F/-15 °C.



# Maintenance

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page [8](#).

## BMW maintenance system

### Principle

The maintenance system provides service notifications and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

### General information

In some cases, scopes and intervals of the maintenance system may vary according to the country version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Condition Based Service

### Principle

Condition Based Service determines the maintenance recommendation using sensors and special algorithms that take into account the operating conditions of the vehicle.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

### General information

Information on service notifications can be displayed on the control display.

Additional information:

Service notifications, refer to page [150](#).

### Service data in the vehicle key

Information on the service notifications is continuously stored in the vehicle key. The authorized service center can read this data out and suggest a maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the vehicle key with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

### Stationary periods

Stationary periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

In such cases, have any time-dependent maintenance, e.g., brake fluid, engine oil, and microfilter/activated-charcoal filter checks, performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Maintenance Booklet for US Models

Please consult your Maintenance Booklet for additional information on the performance of service and maintenance work.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

## Diagnostic socket

### General information

Devices connected to the diagnostic socket will trigger the alarm system after locking the vehicle.

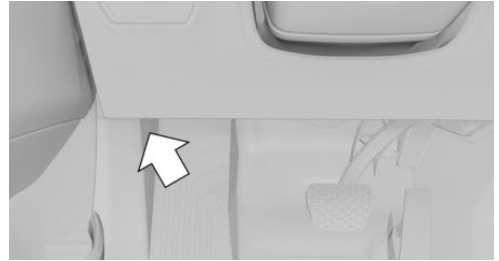
Remove devices connected to the diagnostic socket before locking the vehicle.

### Safety information

#### NOTICE

The socket for Onboard Diagnosis is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis, or contact with the socket for Onboard Diagnosis for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, the manufacture of the vehicle strongly recommends that access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.

### Position



There is a diagnostic socket on the driver's side for reading out vehicle data.

### Emissions



► The warning light illuminates:  
Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

► The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

Reduce the vehicle speed and have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

# Replacing components

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## Onboard vehicle tool kit

The onboard toolkit is located to the left of the trunk in the open compartment.

## Wiper blades

### Safety information

#### NOTICE

The window may sustain damage if the wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade installed. There is a risk of damage to property. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold in or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.

#### NOTICE

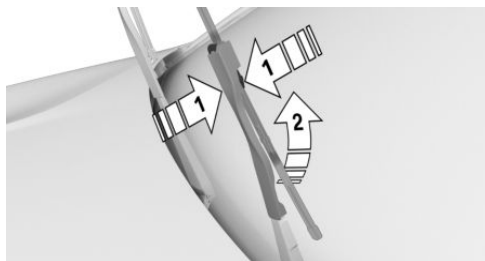
Folded-out wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

## Replacing the wiper blades

1. To change the wiper blades, bring wipers into fold-out position.

Fold-out position of the wipers, refer to page 130.

2. Fold out and hold the wiper arm firmly.
3. Squeeze the retaining spring, arrow 1, and fold up the wiper blade, arrow 2.



4. Remove the wiper blade forward from the detent.
5. Insert the new wiper blade in reverse order of removal until it locks in place.
6. Fold in the wipers.

## Lights and bulbs

### General information

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to driving safety.

All headlights and lights are designed using LED technology at least.

In the event of a malfunction, the vehicle manufacturer recommends having an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop perform any necessary work.



## Safety information

### **Warning**

Intense brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.

## Headlight glass

The inside of the headlight glass can fog up in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If, despite driving with the headlights switched on, moisture such as water droplets increasingly forms in the light, have the headlights checked.

## Vehicle battery

### General information

The battery is maintenance-free.

More information on the battery can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Safety information

### **DANGER**

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

### **Warning**

Vehicle batteries that are not compatible can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Only vehicle batteries that are compatible with the vehicle type should be installed in the vehicle. Information on compatible vehicle batteries is available at an authorized service center.

## Registering the battery to the vehicle

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been changed. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will be available without limitation and any Check Control messages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

## Charging the battery

### General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.



A discharged battery is indicated by a red indicator light.

Charge the battery when acceleration is insufficient.

The maximum charging voltage is 14.4 volts.

The following circumstances can have a negative effect on the performance of the battery:

- ▷ Frequent short-distance drives.
- ▷ Stationary periods of more than one month.



## Safety information

### NOTICE

Non-compatible external chargers can damage the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Only loading devices that are compatible with the vehicle and that are below the maximum charge voltage should be used to charge the vehicle. Information on compatible chargers is available at an authorized service center.

### Warning

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery via sockets or cigarette lighters in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12 V electrical system. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

## Charging the battery

Charge the battery only when the engine is off and via the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

Jump-start terminals, refer to page [304](#).

## Long stationary periods

### General information

The vehicle battery permits stationary periods of approx. 6 weeks.

If the vehicle is stationary for a longer period, charge the vehicle battery every 6 weeks to avoid excessive discharge.

### Low battery charge

If the battery charge is very low, the vehicle battery is automatically disconnected from the vehicle electrical system.

If the vehicle battery is discharged, all electrical components are deactivated. The vehicle can no longer be operated.

To reactivate, charge the vehicle battery via the jump start terminals.

## Deeply discharged vehicle battery

If the vehicle battery is not charged in time, it will be deeply discharged. The battery can then no longer be charged.

## Power interruption

After a power interruption, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- ▷ Parking brake, refer to page [125](#).
- ▷ With Memory function: store the positions again.
- ▷ Time: update.
- ▷ Date: update.

## Disposing of old batteries



Have old batteries disposed of by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, or take them to a collection point.

Maintain the filled battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

## Fuses

### General information

The fuses are located at different places in the vehicle.

Information on the fuse layout and the positions of the fuse boxes is available on the Internet: [fusecard.bmw.com](http://fusecard.bmw.com).

## Safety information

### **Warning**

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.

## Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having the fuses replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.



# Breakdown Assistance

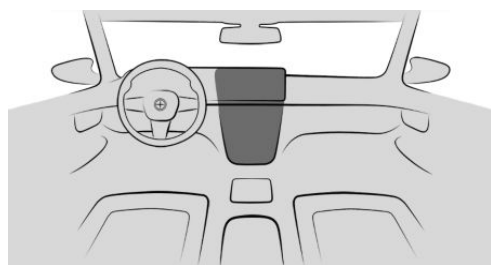
## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

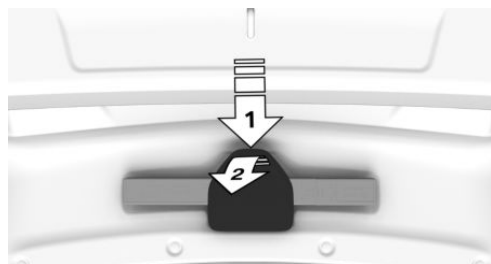
## Hazard warning system



Hazard warning system button

The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning system is turned on.

## Warning triangle



The warning triangle is located on the inside of the tailgate.

Press on the release, arrow 1, and swivel the cover down, arrow 2.

## First-aid kit

### General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle is equipped with a first-aid kit.

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

### Storage

Storage for the first-aid kit is provided in the right side of the cargo area.

## BMW Roadside Assistance

### Principle

BMW Group Roadside Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

### General information

In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition is transmitted to the BMW Roadside Assistance.

There are various ways of contacting BMW Roadside Assistance.

- ▶ Via a Check Control message.

Supplementary text messages, refer to page 142.

- ▶ Via a call with a mobile phone.
- ▶ Via the BMW app.

## Functional requirements

- ▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Cellular network reception.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

## Starting BMW Roadside Assistance manually

If the vehicle is equipped with Teleservices, support is first offered through Teleservice Diagnosis and, where applicable, then through Teleservice Help.

1.  Apps menu
  2. "All apps"
  3. "BMW Assistance"
  4. "BMW Roadside Assistance" or select the desired service.
- Follow the displays on the control display.  
A voice connection is established.

## Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnostics enables detailed vehicle data to be transmitted via cellular networks, which is necessary for vehicle diagnosis. This data is transmitted automatically. It may be necessary to approve this on the control display.

## Teleservice Help

Depending on the country, Teleservice Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by BMW Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission.

You can launch Teleservice Help by requesting it through BMW Roadside Assistance.

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Turn on control display.
4. Consent to Teleservice Help.

## BMW Accident Assistance

### Principle

BMW Group Accident Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of an accident.

### General information

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident, which did not deploy any airbags, a Check Control message is displayed in the instrument cluster. In addition, a text message appears on the control display.

When BMW Accident Assistance is triggered, data on the vehicle's condition is sent to BMW.

### Functional requirements

- ▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Cellular network reception.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

## Starting BMW Accident Assistance

### If an accident is detected automatically

A text message relating to BMW Accident Assistance appears on the control display.

The connection can be established directly:

"Contact accident assistance"

The Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be called up from the stored Check Control messages for a certain length of time.

Additional information:

Check Control, refer to page [141](#).

## Starting BMW Accident Assistance manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

1.  Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "BMW Assistance"
4. "BMW Accident Assistance" or select the desired service.

Follow the displays on the control display.  
A voice connection is established.

## Emergency Call

### Intelligent emergency call

#### Principle

In case of an emergency, an emergency call can be triggered automatically by the system or manually.

#### General information

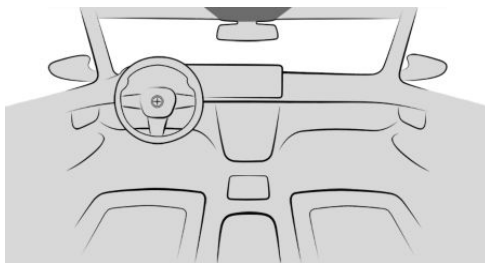
Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle is equipped with an Assist system.

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

The Intelligent Assist system establishes a connection with the BMW Response Center.

For technical reasons, the emergency call cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

## Overview



SOS button

### Functional requirements

- ▶ Standby state is switched on.
- ▶ The Assist system is functional.
- ▶ If the vehicle is equipped with intelligent emergency call: the integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.

### Automatic triggering

Under certain conditions, for example if the airbags are deployed, an emergency call is automatically triggered immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

### Manual triggering

1. Tap the cover flap.
  2. Press and hold the SOS button until the LED in the area of the button illuminates green.
- ▶ The LED is illuminated green when an emergency call has been initiated.

If a cancel prompt appears on the control display, the emergency call can be aborted.

If the situation allows, wait in the vehicle until the voice connection has been established.

- ▶ The LED flashes green when a connection to the BMW Response Center has been established.

The BMW Response Center then makes contact with the occupants of the vehicle and initiates further steps to help.

Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

For this purpose, data that serves to determine the necessary rescue measures, for instance the current position of the vehicle when it can be determined, is transmitted to the BMW Response Center.

Even if the BMW Response Center is no longer heard through the loudspeakers, the BMW Response Center may still be able to hear the occupants of the vehicle.

The BMW Response Center ends the emergency call.

## Malfunction

The function of the emergency call may be impaired.

The LED near the SOS button flashes for approximately 30 seconds. A Check Control message is displayed.

An emergency call may be disrupted in the following circumstances, among others:

- ▶ Extended vehicle idle times.
- ▶ Intense sunlight on vehicle roof.

Have checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Jump-starting

### General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

### Safety information

#### **DANGER**

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

#### **Warning**

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, spark formation may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.

#### **Warning**

In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur during jump-starting. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that no body contact occurs.

### Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electrical components in both vehicles.



## Jump-start terminals

The jump-start terminals are located in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 284.

Open the covers of the jump-start terminals.

## Connecting the cables

Before you begin, switch off all unnecessary electronic systems/components, such as the radio, on the assisting and receiving vehicles.

1. Open the lid of the jump-start terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding jump-start terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding jump-start terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

## Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.

If the vehicle to be started has a diesel engine: let the engine of the assisting vehicle run for approx. 10 minutes.

2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.

If the first attempt to start the engine is not successful, wait a few minutes before making

another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.

3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge, if needed.

## Tow-starting and towing

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

Individual functions may not work correctly when towing with Front Collision Warning enabled or Cruise Control switched on. There is a risk of accident. Switch off Front Collision Warning and Cruise Control before towing.

## Manual transmission

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property.

- ▷ Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- ▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.

## Towing or pushing the vehicle

A broken-down vehicle can be towed or pushed.

Follow the following instructions:

- ▷ Make sure that the standby state is switched on; otherwise, the low beams, tail



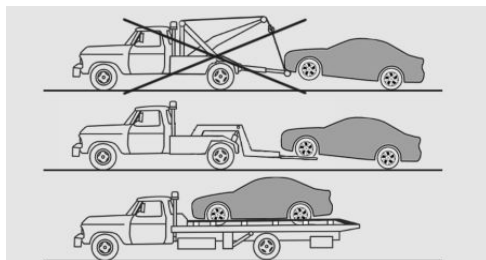
lights, turn signals, and wipers may be unavailable.

- Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle tilted, as the front wheels could turn.
- When the engine is stopped, there is no power assistance. Consequently, more effort needs to be applied when braking and steering.
- Larger steering wheel movements are required.
- The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the vehicle being towed; otherwise, it will not be possible to control handling.
- Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- Do not exceed a towing distance of 30 miles/50 km.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 116.

## Tow truck



The vehicle should be transported with a tow truck with a so-called spectacle lift or on a loading platform.

## M Steptronic Sport transmission: transporting the vehicle

### General information

Do not transport the vehicle by towing it.

## Safety information

### NOTICE

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a single lifted axle. There is a risk of damage to property. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

### Warning

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property.

- Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.

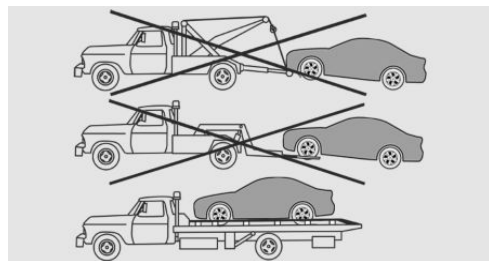
## Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from the hazardous area, push it for a short distance at a speed of no more than 6 mph/10 km/h.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 118.

## Tow truck



The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.



## Towing other vehicles

### General information

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

### Safety information

#### **Warning**

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control handling. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.

#### **NOTICE**

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of damage to property. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.

### Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

If it is impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an inclination, note the following:

- ▶ Free movement is limited when cornering.
- ▶ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an inclination.

### Tow rope

Observe the following notes when using the tow rope:

- ▶ Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.
- ▶ Make sure the tow rope is not twisted when fastening.
- ▶ Check the attachment of the tow fitting and tow rope in regular intervals.
- ▶ Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- ▶ Do not exceed a towing distance of 3 miles/5 km.
- ▶ When driving off to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

## Tow fitting

### General information



The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The tow fitting is found in the onboard vehicle tool kit.

Observe the following notes when using the tow fitting:

- ▶ Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle.
- ▶ Turn the tow fitting at least 5 turns clockwise and screw it in as far as it will go. If necessary, tighten with a suitable object.
- ▶ After use, unscrew the tow fitting counter-clockwise.
- ▶ Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.

- Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.
- Check the attachment of the tow fitting in regular intervals.

Additional information:

Onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page [296](#).

## Safety information

### NOTICE

If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the notes on using the tow fitting.

## Screw thread for tow fitting



Press on the mark on the edge of the cover to push it out.

## Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Start the engine by jump-starting, if possible.

Have the cause of starting issues corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Jump-starting, refer to page [303](#).



# Vehicle Care

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## Washing the vehicle

### General information

Regularly remove foreign bodies such as leaves or snow in the area below the windshield.

Wash the vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense contamination and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Additional information:

Fold-out position of the wipers, refer to page 130.

### Safety information

#### NOTICE

When washing with an open fuel filler flap, damage may occur. There is a risk of damage to property. Close the fuel filler flap before washing. Clean dirt behind the fuel filler flap with a cloth.

## Steam cleaner and high pressure cleaner

### Safety information

#### NOTICE

When cleaning with high pressure cleaners, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is a risk of damage to property. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the operating instructions for the high pressure cleaners.

### Distances and temperature

- ▶ Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- ▶ Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals and lights: 12 inches/30 cm.
- ▶ Minimum distance from glass sunroof: 31.5 in/80 cm.

## Automatic car washes or car washes

### Safety information

#### NOTICE

Using a car wash with high pressure washers may result in water penetration of window areas. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not drive into high-pressure car wash systems.

 **NOTICE**

Improper use of automatic car washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the following instructions:

- ▷ Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- ▷ Do not drive through a car wash with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the body.
- ▷ Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- ▷ Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- ▷ Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the window wiper system.

## Driving into a car wash

 **NOTICE**

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. The wheels are blocked. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch off standby if the vehicle is meant to coast, e.g., in a car wash.

In a car wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

Some car washes do not permit persons in the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal sounds when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 118.

## Driving out of a car wash

Ensure that the vehicle key is in the car.

Turn on drive-ready state.

Additional information:

Drive-ready state, refer to page 40.

## Lights

Do not rub wet lights dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents or cleaning agents containing alcohol.

Soak areas that have been dirtied, for instance from insects, with auto shampoo and wash off with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

## After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking effect can be reduced. The heat generated during braking dries brake disks and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

# Vehicle care

## Vehicle care products

### General information

BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning agents from BMW. Suitable vehicle care products are available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.



## Safety information

### Warning

Cleaning agents can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the packaging.

## Vehicle paintwork

### General information

Regular vehicle care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen, can affect the vehicle paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of the vehicle care to these influences.

Aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings, must be removed immediately to prevent alterations or discolorations of the finish.

### Matte paintwork

Only use cleaning and care products suitable for vehicles with matte paintwork.

### Leather care

Remove dust from the leather regularly, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to heavy abrasion and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because contamination on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective coating of the leather surface.

Remove aggressive substances, e.g., sunscreen, immediately to prevent alterations or discolorations of the leather.

### Synthetic leather care

Clean synthetic leather regularly with a damp microfiber cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, dust and road grime particles will rub into pores and folds, causing significant abrasion and premature degradation of the surface.

In case of major soiling, use a moist soft sponge or microfiber cloth with suitable interior cleaners.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, e.g., sunscreen, to prevent alterations or discolorations of the synthetic leather.

### Fabric care

#### General information

In case of major contaminations, such as beverage stains, use a moist soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaners.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, e.g., sunscreen, to prevent alterations or discolorations of the fabric.

## Safety information

### NOTICE

Open hook and loop fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers and other cloth upholstery in the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.

### Upholstery material care

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

Clean extensively down to the seams. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

### Textile care

Use a microfiber cloth for cleaning minor contamination.

Dampen the cloth with water.

### Caring for special components

#### Displays, operating elements, and protective glass of the Head-up display

##### NOTICE

Surfaces can be damaged by improper cleaning, e.g., by using chemical cleaners, or from moisture or liquid of any kind. Physical damage to the material is possible.

- Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.
- Use a dry, clean antistatic microfiber cloth for cleaning displays.
- Clean the operating elements and, depending on vehicle equipment, the protective glass of the Head-up display with a damp microfiber cloth and standard household dish soap.

### Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral rim cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam cleaners above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective coating of adjacent components, such as the brake disk.

After cleaning, apply the brakes shortly to dry them. The heat generated during braking dries brake disks and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

### Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean Chrome surfaces, especially in case of exposure to road salt, with plenty of water and added auto shampoo as needed.

### Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface contamination of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care products at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

### Wiper blades

The wiper blades are cleaned by using the washer system.

Avoid cleaning the wiper blades manually, as this may reduce wiper performance.

### Fine wood parts

Clean the fine wood veneer and fine wood components with a damp cloth. Then dry with a soft cloth.

### Kenaf

Only treat parts made of Kenaf fibers using a suitable care product.

### Plastic components

##### NOTICE

Solvent cleaners that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, cold cleaning agents, fuel and such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of damage to property. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Do not soak the headliner.



## Seat belts

### **Warning**

Chemical solvent cleaners can destroy the seat belt fabric. Missing protective effect of the seat belts. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Use only a mild soap solution for cleaning the seat belts.

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Use only a mild soap solution for cleaning the installed belt straps.

Seat belts should only be allowed to retract if they are dry.

## Carpets and floor mats

### **Warning**

Objects in the driver's footwell can limit the pedal travel or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's footwell. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

The floor mats can be removed from the interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very contaminated, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the driving direction only.

## Sensors and camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

## Taking the vehicle out of service

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.





# Technical data

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently

available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

## General information

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. Vehicle-specific data may deviate from this, for instance due to the optional equipment chosen, national-market version, or country-

specific measuring process. More specific values can be obtained in approval documents, on the vehicle info label, or from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment version or country-specific measurement procedure.

The height of the vehicle can also differ, e.g., due to tires and vehicle load.

### BMW M2

|                               |       |             |
|-------------------------------|-------|-------------|
| Width with mirrors            | in/mm | 81.4/2,068  |
| Width without mirrors         | in/mm | 74.3/1,887  |
| Height                        | in/mm | 55.2/1,403  |
| Length                        | in/mm | 180.3/4,580 |
| Wheelbase                     | in/mm | 108.1/2,747 |
| Smallest turning radius diam. | ft/m  | 39.0/11.9   |

## Weights

| BMW M2                                   |        | a)          | b)          |
|------------------------------------------|--------|-------------|-------------|
| Approved gross vehicle weight            | lbs/kg | 4,751/2,155 | 4,751/2,155 |
| Payload                                  | lbs/kg | 772/350     | 772/350     |
| Approved front axle weight               | lbs/kg | 2,370/1,075 | 2,370/1,075 |
| Approved rear axle weight                | lbs/kg | 2,502/1,135 | 2,502/1,135 |
| a) With manual transmission.             |        |             |             |
| b) With M Steptronic Sport transmission. |        |             |             |

## Filling capacities

| BMW M2             |               |           |
|--------------------|---------------|-----------|
| Fuel tank, approx. | US gal/liters | 13.7/52.0 |

Observe further information on fuel quality, refer to page [287](#).

# Appendix

## General information

---

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

## Updates made after the editorial deadline

---

The following chapters were updated in the printed version of the Owner's Manual after the editorial deadline for the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle had closed:

- ▶ Operation: Light: Cornering light: General.
- ▶ Driving tips: Things to remember when driving: Break-in procedure: Brake system.



# Everything from A to Z

## Index

### A

- ABS, see Antilock Braking System [180](#)
- Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control [123](#)
- Acceleration sensor, see G-Meter [147](#)
- Accessories and parts [9](#)
- Accident Assistance, see BMW Accident Assistance [301](#)
- Accident prevention, see Active Protection [177](#)
- ACC, see Cruise Control with Distance Control [199](#)
- Activated carbon filter, see Interior filter [230](#)
- Activation word [52](#)
- Active Blind Spot Detection [172](#)
- Active Cruise Control [199](#)
- Active damping control, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension [222](#)
- Active Guard, see Collision warning systems [162](#)
- Active M differential [191](#)
- Active Park Distance Control [215](#)
- Active Protection [177](#)
- Adaptive Light Control [155](#)
- Adaptive lighting functions [155](#)
- Adaptive M chassis/suspension [222](#)
- Adding engine oil types [290](#)
- Additional camera view displays [210](#)
- Additives, engine oil types [290](#)
- Adjustments, steering wheel [105](#)
- After run of fan, see Exhaust gas particulate filter [250](#)
- Airbags [159](#)
- Airbags, indicator and warning light [161](#)
- Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode [227](#)
- Air conditioning, climate [227](#)
- Air distribution, manual [228](#)
- Air drying, see air conditioning [227](#)
- Air flow, automatic climate control [228](#)
- Air outlets, see Ventilation [229](#)
- Air pressure, tires [258](#)
- Air quality [230](#)
- Air vent, see Ventilation [229](#)
- Alarm system [85](#)
- Alarm, unintentional [86](#)
- All-season tires, see Winter tires [265](#)
- Amazon Alexa Car Integration [55](#)
- Ambient light [158](#)
- Android Auto, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Antifreeze, see Washer fluid [292](#)
- Antilock Braking System [180](#)
- Anti-theft protection, lug bolt lock [281](#)
- Apple CarPlay, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Applications see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Applications, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Apps, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Aquaplaning [251](#)
- Assistance when driving off, see Drive-off assistant [180](#)
- Assistance with breakdown [300](#)
- Audio player, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
- Authorized service center, see BMW Accident Assistance [301](#)
- Authorized service center, see BMW Roadside Assistance [300](#)
- AUTO H button, see Automatic Hold [125](#)
- Automatic climate control [223](#)
- Automatic control, headlight [152](#)
- Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror [104](#)
- Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags [161](#)
- Automatic dimming, see Automatic High Beam Assistant [155](#)

Automatic headlight control [152](#)  
Automatic High Beam Assistant [155](#)  
Automatic Hold [125](#)  
Automatic locking [84](#)  
Automatic Parking Assistant [216](#)  
Automatic program, automatic climate control [225](#)  
Automatic time setting [148](#)  
Automatic transmission, see M Steptronic Sport transmission [117](#)  
Automatic unlocking [84](#)  
Automating routines, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant [55](#)  
AUTO program, automatic climate control [225](#)  
Auto Start/Stop function [113](#)  
Average consumption, see Trip data [146](#)  
Axle loads, approved [315](#)

## B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support [96](#)  
Backrest, seats [93](#)  
Backrest tilt [95](#)  
Backrest width [96](#)  
Back-up Assistant [219](#)  
Bandages, see First-aid kit [300](#)  
Bar for tow-starting/towing [306](#)  
Battery, disposing of [298](#)  
Battery, vehicle [297](#)  
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing [304](#)  
Belts, see Seat belts [98](#)  
Blind spot collision warning [172](#)  
Blower [228](#)  
Bluetooth audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
Bluetooth connection, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
BMW Accident Assistance [301](#)  
BMW app, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
BMW Assist, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)  
BMW Curved Display [46](#)  
BMW Digital Key [79](#)  
BMW ID [63](#)  
BMW iDrive [43](#)  
BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant [51](#)  
BMW Live Cockpit Plus, see BMW Curved Display [46](#)  
BMW Live Cockpit Professional, see BMW Curved Display [46](#)  
BMW maintenance system [294](#)  
BMW M technology [248](#)  
BMW Operating System, see BMW iDrive [43](#)  
BMW Roadside Assistance [300](#)  
BMW SIM Reader, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
BMW Theater Screen, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
Bottle holder, front, see Cup holder, front [242](#)  
Brake assistant [180](#)  
Brake disks, break-in [249](#)  
Brake disks, see Brake system [249](#)  
Brake pads, break-in [249](#)  
Brake pads, see Brake system [249](#)  
Brake, sensitivity [185](#)  
Brake, settings [185](#)  
Brake system [249](#)  
Braking, information [251](#)  
Breakdown assistance [300](#)  
Break-in [249](#)  
Break recommendation, see Fatigue alert [178](#)  
Brightness, control display [47](#)  
button AUTO H, see Automatic Hold [125](#)  
Button, central locking system [82](#)  
Buttons on the steering wheel [30](#)  
Button, SOS, see Intelligent emergency call [302](#)  
Button, Start/Stop [113](#)  
Bypassing, see Jump-starting [303](#)

## C

Cable for tow-starting/towing [306](#)  
Calendar day, see Date [148](#)  
Calibration of the front seats [97](#)  
California Proposition 65 Warning [9](#)  
Camera cleaning [312](#)  
Camera lenses, care [312](#)  
Camera, rearview camera [212](#)  
Cameras, see Sensors of the vehicle [35](#)

- Camera view assistance lines [210](#)
- CANCEL button, Active Cruise Control [199](#)
- CANCEL button, Cruise Control [196](#)
- Can holder, front, see Cup holder, front [242](#)
- Care [308](#)
- Care, displays, screens [311](#)
- Care, Head-up display [311](#)
- Care, light-alloy wheels [311](#)
- Care, vehicle [309](#)
- Cargo [243](#)
- Cargo area [243](#)
- Cargo area, enlarging [245](#)
- Cargo area, securing, see Valet parking mode [83](#)
- Cargo, stowing and securing [244](#)
- Cargo straps, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area [244](#)
- Car key, see Vehicle key [69](#)
- Carpet, care [312](#)
- Car seats, see Transporting children safely [107](#)
- Car wash [308](#)
- Car wash, automatic [308](#)
- Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust gas system [250](#)
- CBS, see Condition Based Service [294](#)
- Cell phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
- Center armrest, front [241](#)
- Center console [32](#)
- Central display area, instrument cluster [145](#)
- Central Information Display (CID), see Control display [46](#)
- Central locking switch, see Central locking system [82](#)
- Central locking system [82](#)
- Central screen, see Control display [46](#)
- Changes, technical, see For Your Own Safety [8](#)
- Change, wheels and tires [263](#)
- Changing parts [296](#)
- Changing wheels [279](#)
- Charging cradle [238](#)
- Charging smartphone, see Wireless charging tray [238](#)
- Charging tray for smartphones, see Wireless charging tray [238](#)
- Chassis/suspension, electronic, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension [222](#)
- Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number [13](#)
- Check Control [141](#)
- Checking the engine oil level electronically [289](#)
- Children, seating position [107](#)
- Children, transporting safely [107](#)
- Child restraint seats [107](#)
- Child restraint systems, mounting [108](#)
- Child restraint systems, see Transporting children safely [107](#)
- Child seat installation [108](#)
- Child seat, mounting [108](#)
- Child seat mountings LATCH [109](#)
- Child seats, see Transporting children safely [107](#)
- Chrome-plated surfaces, care [311](#)
- Chrome surfaces, care [311](#)
- Cleaning, displays, screens [311](#)
- Cleaning, Head-up display [311](#)
- Cleaning the camera [312](#)
- Climate control [223](#)
- Closing with the Key Card [78](#)
- Closing with the smartphone, see BMW Digital Key [79](#)
- Clothes hooks [242](#)
- Coat hooks [242](#)
- Collision warning systems [162](#)
- Comfort Access [75](#)
- Communication, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
- Comparison of entries, see Entry comparison [45](#)
- Compartments in the doors [241](#)
- Compound brake [248](#)
- Compressor [268](#)
- Condensation water under the parked vehicle [253](#)
- Condensation, windshield [229](#)
- Condition Based Service [294](#)
- Confirmation signal from the vehicle [84](#)
- ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)



- ConnectedDrive services, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
- Connected Music, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle [56](#)
- Connection, electrical devices, see Sockets [236](#)
- Consumption, see Trip data [146](#)
- Contacts, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Continued driving with a flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor [271](#)
- Continued driving with flat tire, see Flat tire monitor [277](#)
- Control display [46](#)
- Control display, brightness [47](#)
- Control display, pop-ups [45](#)
- Controller [47](#)
- Control systems, driving stability [180](#)
- Coolant [291](#)
- Coolant level [292](#)
- Cooling, maximum [227](#)
- Cooling system [291](#)
- Cornering light [155](#)
- Corrosion, brake disks [252](#)
- Cosmetic mirror [236](#)
- Cross Traffic Warning [174](#)
- Cruise Control, see Cruise Control with Distance Control [199](#)
- Cruise Control with Distance Control [199](#)
- Cruise Control without Distance Control [196](#)
- Cruising range [148](#)
- Cup holder, front [242](#)
- Current driving condition [149](#)
- Curved Display [46](#)
- D**
- Damage, tires [263](#)
- Damping control [222](#)
- Damping control active, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension [222](#)
- Dashboard [30](#)
- Dashboard, see Instrument cluster [133](#)
- Data memory [10](#)
- Data protection, settings [62](#)
- Data, see Personal data, deleting [62](#)
- Data, technical [314](#)
- Date [148](#)
- Daytime driving lights [154](#)
- Daytime running lights [154](#)
- DCC, see Cruise Control without Distance Control [196](#)
- Defrost function [229](#)
- Defrost, windshield [229](#)
- Deleting, personal data [62](#)
- Departure schedule, see Pre-ventilation [230](#)
- Departure time, preconditioning via Remote Engine Start [233](#)
- Departure time, pre-ventilation [231](#)
- Destination input [6](#)
- Diagnostic connection [295](#)
- Diagnostic socket [295](#)
- Differential lock [191](#)
- Digital Key [79](#)
- Digital Key, see BMW Digital Key [79](#)
- Dimensions [314](#)
- Dimmable exterior mirrors [104](#)
- Dimmable interior mirror [104](#)
- Direct dial buttons, see Shortcuts [46](#)
- Display and operating concept, see BMW iDrive [43](#)
- Display, current driving condition [149](#)
- Display, iDrive [45](#)
- Display in the windshield, see Head-up display [135](#)
- Display lighting, see Instrument lighting [157](#)
- Display panel, see Instrument cluster [133](#)
- Displays [133](#)
- Displays and icons [7](#)
- Displays for the vehicle, see Live Vehicle [134](#)
- Display, speed limiting function, see Speed Limit Info [192](#)
- Disposal, coolant [292](#)
- Disposal, vehicle battery [298](#)
- Distance Control, see Cruise Control [199](#)
- Distance Warning, see Park Distance Control [212](#)
- Door handle lighting, see Welcome lights [154](#)
- Drivelogic [121](#)
- Drive mode [119](#)
- Drive-off assistant [180](#)

Drive-off assistant, see Dynamic Stability Control [186](#)  
 Driver Assistance, parking, see Parking assistance systems [208](#)  
 Driver assistance systems [192](#)  
 Drive-ready state, engine start [40](#)  
 Drive-ready state, see Operating condition of the vehicle [39](#)  
 Driver profiles [63](#)  
 Driver profiles, welcome screen [63](#)  
 Driving [113](#)  
 Driving Assistant, see Collision warning systems [162](#)  
 Driving comfort [222](#)  
 Driving condition, display [149](#)  
 Driving Dynamics Control [131](#)  
 Driving mode, M MODE [183](#)  
 Driving notes, break-in [249](#)  
 Driving notes, general [250](#)  
 Driving program, see Drivelogic [121](#)  
 Driving stability control systems [180](#)  
 Driving, Start/Stop button [113](#)  
 Driving through water [251](#)  
 Driving tips, see General driving notes [250](#)  
 DSC, see Dynamic Stability Control [186](#)  
 Dynamic Cruise Control, see Cruise Control [196](#)  
 Dynamic damping, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension [222](#)  
 Dynamic Stability Control [186](#)

## E

Electric steering wheel lock [105](#)  
 Electronic oil measurement [289](#)  
 Electronic Stability Program ESP, see Dynamic Stability Control [186](#)  
 Emergency braking, see PostCrash – iBrake [177](#)  
 Emergency call [302](#)  
 Emergency unlocking, transmission lock [122](#)  
 Emergency unlocking, trunk lid [78](#)  
 Energy savings, see Gear shift indicator [143](#)  
 Engine, automatic Start/Stop function [113](#)  
 Engine compartment [284](#)  
 Engine coolant [291](#)  
 Engine oil filler neck [290](#)

Engine oil temperature [144](#)  
 Engine oil, topping up [290](#)  
 Engine oil types to add [290](#)  
 Engine start, see Drive-ready state [40](#)  
 Engine start, see Jump-starting [303](#)  
 Engine stopping, see Drive-ready state [40](#)  
 Entering a destination, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
 Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)  
 Entertainment, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)  
 Entertainment, selection list in the instrument cluster [142](#)  
 Entry comparison [45](#)  
 Equipment, interior [234](#)  
 Error indicators, see Check Control [141](#)  
 eSIM telephony, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
 ESP Electronic Stability Program, see Dynamic Stability Control [186](#)  
 Exchange, wheels and tires [263](#)  
 Exhaust gas particulate filter [250](#)  
 Exhaust gas system [250](#)  
 Exhaust gas system sound [132](#)  
 Exhaust, see Exhaust gas system [250](#)  
 Exterior lighting, locked vehicle [154](#)  
 Exterior mirror [103](#)  
 Exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor [104](#)  
 Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature [104](#)  
 External start, see Jump-starting [303](#)  
 Eyelet for towing [306](#)  
 Eyes, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area [244](#)

## F

Factory settings, see Vehicle data, resetting [62](#)  
 Failure message, see Check Control [141](#)  
 Fan after run, see Exhaust gas particulate filter [250](#)  
 Fan, see Air flow [228](#)  
 Fastening seat belts, see Seat belts [98](#)  
 Fatigue Alert [178](#)  
 Fatigue warner, see Fatigue Alert [178](#)  
 Fault indicators, see Check Control [141](#)

Filler neck for engine oil [290](#)  
Filter, see Interior filter [230](#)  
Fine wood parts, care [311](#)  
First-aid kit [300](#)  
Flat tire, changing wheels [279](#)  
Flat tire, continued driving, see Flat tire monitor [277](#)  
Flat tire, continued driving, see Tire Pressure Monitor [271](#)  
Flat tire message, see Flat tire monitor [278](#)  
Flat tire message, see Tire Pressure Monitor [274](#)  
Flat tire monitor [277](#)  
Flat tire, repairing [265](#)  
Flat tire, see Flat tire monitor [277](#)  
Flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor [271](#)  
Flat tire warning light, see Flat tire monitor [278](#)  
Flat tire warning light, see Tire Pressure Monitor [274](#)  
Floods, driving through [251](#)  
Floor carpet, care [312](#)  
Floor mats, care [312](#)  
Fold-away position, wiper [130](#)  
Fold-out position [130](#)  
Foot brake [251](#)  
Forward Collision Mitigation [164](#)  
Forward Collision Warning, see Forward Collision Warning [164](#)  
For Your Own Safety [8](#)  
Front airbags [159](#)  
Front lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [296](#)  
Front passenger's side exterior mirror, tilting down, see Automatic Curb Monitor [104](#)  
Front passenger airbags, automatic deactivation [161](#)  
Front-seat passenger airbag, indicator light [162](#)  
Front seats [93](#)  
Fuel [287](#)  
Fuel filler cap [256](#)  
Fuel filler flap [256](#)  
Fuel filler flap, emergency unlocking [257](#)  
Fuel filler flap, manual operation [257](#)  
Fuel filler flap, unlocking manually [257](#)  
Fuel gauge [148](#)

Fuel quality [287](#)  
Fuel recommendation [287](#)  
Fuel tank, see Filling capacity [315](#)  
Fuses [298](#)

## G

Garage door opener, see Integrated Universal Remote Control [234](#)  
Gasoline [287](#)  
Gasoline particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter [250](#)  
Gasoline quality [288](#)  
Gear change [120](#)  
Gear change, M Steptronic Sport transmission [117](#)  
Gear position, see Selector lever positions [117](#)  
gearshift [116](#)  
Gear Shift Assistant, manual transmission [116](#)  
General driving notes [250](#)  
Glare shield, see Sun visor [236](#)  
Glass sunroof [89](#)  
Glass sunroof, initialize the system [91](#)  
Glove compartment [240](#)  
G-Meter [147](#)  
GPS navigation, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
Gross vehicle weight, approved [315](#)  
Guest profile, see BMW ID [63](#)

## H

Handbrake, see Parking brake [124](#)  
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code [235](#)  
Hands-free device, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
Hands-free system [6](#)  
Hazard warning system [300](#)  
Head airbag [160](#)  
Headlight control, automatic [152](#)  
Headlight flasher [127](#)  
Headlight glass [297](#)  
Headlights, care [309](#)  
Headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [296](#)

Headlights, turning up, dimming, see Auto-matic High Beam Assistant [155](#)  
 Headliner [34](#)  
 Head restraints and seats [93](#)  
 Head restraints, front [100](#)  
 Head restraints, rear [101](#)  
 Head-up display [135](#)  
 Head-up display, care [311](#)  
 Head-up display, position, saving see Memory function [105](#)  
 Heated steering wheel [105](#)  
 Heavy cargo, stowing [244](#)  
 Height, vehicle [314](#)  
 High beams [127](#)  
 Higher speed range [253](#)  
 High-performance engine [248](#)  
 Hills [252](#)  
 Hill start assistant, see Drive-off assistant [180](#)  
 Holder for beverages, front [242](#)  
 HomeLink, see Integrated Universal Remote Control [234](#)  
 Homepage, see Internet [7](#)  
 Hood [284](#)  
 Horn [30](#)  
 Hotel function, see Valet parking mode [83](#)  
 Hot exhaust gas system [250](#)  
 Hour, see Time [148](#)

## I

iBrake – PostCrash [177](#)  
 Ice, see Outside temperature [144](#)  
 Ice warning, see Outside temperature [144](#)  
 Icons and displays [7](#)  
 Identification marks, tires [261](#)  
 Identification number, see Vehicle identification number [13](#)  
 iDrive [43](#)  
 ID transmitter, see Vehicle key [69](#)  
 Ignition key, see Vehicle key [69](#)  
 Inclination [95](#)  
 Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag [162](#)  
 Indicator lights [136](#)  
 Individual air distribution [228](#)  
 Individual settings, see BMW ID [63](#)  
 Individual settings, see M Setup [181](#)

Inductive charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray [238](#)  
 Information [6](#)  
 Initialization, see flat tire monitor [278](#)  
 Input, iDrive [45](#)  
 Installation of child restraint systems [108](#)  
 Instrument cluster [133](#)  
 Instrument lighting [157](#)  
 Instrument panel, see Instrument cluster [133](#)  
 Integrated key [70](#)  
 Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle [6](#)  
 Integrated Universal Remote Control [234](#)  
 Intelligent emergency call [302](#)  
 Intelligent Personal Assistant [51](#)  
 Intended use [8](#)  
 Interior equipment [234](#)  
 Interior filter [230](#)  
 Interior lights [157](#)  
 Interior lights, locked vehicle [154](#)  
 Interior mirror [104](#)  
 Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature [104](#)  
 Interior motion sensor [86](#)  
 Internet page [7](#)  
 Interval indicator, see Service notifications [150](#)

## J

Jacking points [281](#)  
 Jacking points for the vehicle jack [281](#)  
 Jam protection system, glass sunroof [91](#)  
 Jam protection system, windows [88](#)  
 Journey data [146](#)  
 Joystick, M Steptronic Sport transmission [117](#)  
 Jump-starting [303](#)  
 Jump-starting terminals [304](#)  
 Jump-start terminals [304](#)

## K

Kenaf, care [311](#)  
 Key Card [78](#)  
 Keyless Go, see Comfort Access [75](#)  
 Key, mechanical [70](#)  
 Key, see Vehicle key [69](#)  
 Kickdown, M Steptronic Sport transmission [117](#)  
 Knee airbag [160](#)

**L**

Labeling [261](#)  
Label on recommended tires [264](#)  
Lane boundary [169](#)  
Lane departure warning [169](#)  
Lane lines, additional camera view displays [210](#)  
Lane threshold, warning [169](#)  
Language, setting [53](#)  
Lashing eyes in the cargo area [244](#)  
LATCH child seat mountings [109](#)  
Launch Control [123](#)  
Leather care [310](#)  
LED headlights, changing, see Lights and bulbs [296](#)  
Length, vehicle [314](#)  
Letters and numbers, entering [45](#)  
Light-alloy wheels, care [311](#)  
Light control, adaptive [155](#)  
Light in exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection [172](#)  
Light in exterior mirror, see Cross Traffic Warning [174](#)  
Lighting [152](#)  
Light replacement, see Lights and bulbs [296](#)  
Lights [152](#)  
Lights and bulbs [296](#)  
Lights, care [309](#)  
Light switch [152](#)  
LIM button, see Manual Speed Limiter [194](#)  
List, instrument cluster, see Selection lists [142](#)  
Live Cockpit Plus, see BMW Curved Display [46](#)  
Live Cockpit Professional, see BMW Curved Display [46](#)  
Live Vehicle [134](#)  
Load [244](#)  
Loading [243](#)  
Loading the cargo area, see Stowing cargo [244](#)  
Local time, see Time [148](#)  
Locking, automatic [84](#)  
Locking, see Opening and Closing [69](#)  
Locking, settings [83](#)  
Locking the rear automatic climate control [225](#)  
Lock, lug bolts [281](#)

Loop [306](#)  
Low beams, operation [153](#)  
Lower back support, see Lumbar support [96](#)  
Low Speed Assistant [121](#)  
Lug bolt lock [281](#)  
Luggage rack, refer to Roof bars [253](#)  
Luggage straps [244](#)  
Lumbar support [96](#)

**M**

Maintenance [294](#)  
Maintenance recommendation, see Condition Based Service [294](#)  
Maintenance, see Service notifications [150](#)  
Maintenance system, BMW [294](#)  
Make-up mirror [236](#)  
Malfunction, vehicle key [72](#)  
Manual brake, see Parking brake [124](#)  
Manual control, air distribution [228](#)  
Manual control, air flow [228](#)  
Manually unlocking doors, see Integrated key [70](#)  
Manual mode, M Steptronic Sport transmission [117](#)  
Manual Speed Limiter [194](#)  
Manual transmission [116](#)  
Manual transmission, see Manual transmission [116](#)  
Map, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
Map update, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
Matte paintwork [310](#)  
Matt paint, care [310](#)  
Maximum cooling [227](#)  
Maximum speed, display, see Speed Limit Info [192](#)  
Maximum speed, winter tires [265](#)  
M brake, sensitivity [185](#)  
M Brake, settings [185](#)  
M chassis/suspension, adaptive, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension [222](#)  
M Compound brake [248](#)  
M differential, active [191](#)  
MDM, see M Dynamic Mode [187](#)

M Drift Analyzer [190](#)  
M Driver's Package, driving instructions [253](#)  
M Dynamic Mode [187](#)  
Medical supplies, see First-aid kit [300](#)  
Memory function [105](#)  
M Engine Dynamics Control [131](#)  
Messages, see Check Control [141](#)  
Messages, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
Meters, see Instrument cluster [133](#)  
Microfilter, see Interior filter [230](#)  
Minimum tread depth, tires [262](#)  
Mirror position, saving, see Memory function [105](#)  
M MODE [183](#)  
Mobile devices, connecting [56](#)  
Mobile phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)  
Mobile radio in the vehicle [251](#)  
Mobile Service, see BMW Accident Assistance [301](#)  
Mobile Service, see BMW Roadside Assistance [300](#)  
Mobility System, see Tire repair set [267](#)  
Modifications, technical, see For Your Own Safety [8](#)  
Moisture in headlight, see Headlight glass [297](#)  
Monitor, see Control display [46](#)  
Mounting of child restraint systems [108](#)  
MP3 player, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
M Setup [181](#)  
M Steptronic Sport transmission [117](#)  
M technology [248](#)  
M Traction Control [188](#)  
Multifunction hook [244](#)  
Multi-function steering wheel [30](#)  
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons [30](#)  
My BMW app, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)

## N

Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints, front [100](#)

Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints, rear [101](#)  
Net, cargo area [245](#)  
Neutral cleaner, see Light-alloy wheels, care [311](#)  
Notifications, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing [306](#)

## O

OBD, see On-board diagnosis [295](#)  
Obstacle marking, additional camera view displays [210](#)  
Octane number, see Gasoline quality [288](#)  
Odometer, see Trip data [146](#)  
OFF display, instrument cluster, see Standby and Drive-ready state [144](#)  
Oil filler neck [290](#)  
Oil level, checking electronically [289](#)  
Oil service interval, see Service notifications [150](#)  
Oil, topping up [290](#)  
Oil types to add, engine [290](#)  
Old battery [298](#)  
On-board computer, see Trip data [146](#)  
On-board diagnosis [295](#)  
Onboard vehicle tool kit [296](#)  
On-call service, see BMW Accident Assistance [301](#)  
On-call service, see BMW Roadside Assistance [300](#)  
Opening and closing [69](#)  
Opening with the Key Card [78](#)  
Opening with the smartphone, see BMW Digital Key [79](#)  
Operating condition of the vehicle [39](#)  
Operating principle, see BMW iDrive [43](#)  
Operating system, see BMW iDrive [43](#)  
Operation via voice [51](#)  
Optimal acceleration figures, see Shift lights [144](#)  
Optional equipment, see Vehicle equipment [8](#)  
Outside temperature [144](#)  
Overwintering, see Long-term vehicle storage [312](#)

Owner's Manual via voice operation, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant [53](#)

## P

Paint, vehicle care [310](#)

Paintwork [310](#)

Panic alarm, see Panic mode [85](#)

Panic mode [85](#)

Panoramic display, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)

Panoramic glass sunroof, see Glass sunroof [89](#)

Park Distance Control [212](#)

Parking assistance lines, additional camera view displays [210](#)

Parking assistance systems [208](#)

Parking assistant [216](#)

Parking Assistant, see Park Distance Control [212](#)

Parking Assistant, see Parking assistance systems [208](#)

Parking brake [124](#)

Parking brake function, see Active Park Distance Control [215](#)

Parking lights [153](#)

Parking with Automatic Hold [125](#)

Particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter [250](#)

Parts and accessories [9](#)

Pathway lighting [154](#)

Pathway lighting, turning on [154](#)

Payload [244](#)

Payload, technical data [315](#)

PDC, see Park Distance Control [212](#)

Pedestrian Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation [164](#)

Performance display, see Sport displays [150](#)

Personal Assistant [51](#)

Personal data, deleting [62](#)

Personal eSIM, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)

Personal hotspot, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)

Personal profile, see BMW ID [63](#)

Personal settings [62](#)

Physical units, see Units of measurement, setting [149](#)

Plastic parts, care [311](#)

Pop-ups, control display [45](#)

PostCrash – iBrake [177](#)

Power failure [298](#)

Power interruption [298](#)

Power windows [87](#)

Pre-conditioning [231](#)

Pressure monitor, tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor [271](#)

Pressure, tires [258](#)

Pressure warning, see Flat tire monitor [277](#)

Pressure warning, see Tire Pressure Monitor [271](#)

Pre-ventilation [230](#)

Prevention of rear-end collision, see Rear-end collision preparation [174](#)

Protective function, glass sunroof, see Jam protection system [91](#)

Protective function, windows, see Jam protection system [88](#)

Push-and-turn reel, see Controller [47](#)

## R

Racing track [254](#)

Radar sensors, see Sensors of the vehicle [35](#)

Radiator fan, see Exhaust gas particulate filter [250](#)

Radiator fluid [291](#)

Radio information, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)

Radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)

Radio stations, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)

Rain sensor [129](#)

READY display, instrument cluster, see Standby and Drive-ready state [144](#)

Real Time Traffic Information, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)

Rear automatic climate control [223](#)

Rear automatic climate control, locking operating elements [225](#)

Rear-end collision preparation [174](#)  
 Rear lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [296](#)  
 Rear seat backrests, folding down [245](#)  
 Rearview camera [212](#)  
 Rear-view mirror, exterior [103](#)  
 Rearview mirror, interior [104](#)  
 Rear window defroster [229](#)  
 Recirculated-air mode [227](#)  
 Recirculating air filter, see Interior filter [230](#)  
 Recommended tire brands [264](#)  
 Refueling [256](#)  
 Remote control, see Vehicle key [69](#)  
 Remote control, universal [234](#)  
 Remote Engine Start, see Stationary climate control [231](#)  
 Remote services, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
 Remote Software Upgrade [58](#)  
 Renewal, wheels and tires [263](#)  
 Replace battery, vehicle key [70](#)  
 Replacement, wheels and tires [263](#)  
 Replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs [296](#)  
 Replacing light diodes, see Lights and bulbs [296](#)  
 Replacing parts [296](#)  
 Reporting safety malfunctions [14](#)  
 RES CNCL button, Active Cruise Control [199](#)  
 RES CNCL button, Cruise Control [196](#)  
 Reserve warning, see Range [148](#)  
 Reservoir, washer fluid [292](#)  
 Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor [273](#)  
 Reset, vehicle settings [62](#)  
 Restricted Driving, see BMW Digital Key [79](#)  
 RESUME button, Active Cruise Control [199](#)  
 RESUME button, Cruise Control [196](#)  
 Retreaded tires [264](#)  
 Reversing Assistant [219](#)  
 Roadside Assistance, see BMW Roadside Assistance [300](#)  
 Roadside parking lights [153](#)  
 Rolling code hand-held transmitter [235](#)  
 RON, see gasoline quality [288](#)  
 Roof bars [253](#)  
 Roofliner [34](#)  
 Roof luggage rack, refer to Roof bars [253](#)

Rope for tow-starting/towing [306](#)  
 Route, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
 RPM adjustment, see Gear Shift Assistant [116](#)  
 Rubber components, care [311](#)

## S

Safe braking [251](#)  
 Safe Share function, see BMW Digital Key [79](#)  
 Safety and warning, see Collision warning systems [162](#)  
 Safety package, see Active Protection [177](#)  
 Safety systems, see Airbags [159](#)  
 Safety systems, see Collision warning systems [162](#)  
 Satellite radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
 Saved stations, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
 Screen, see BMW Curved Display [46](#)  
 Screen, see Control display [46](#)  
 Sealing compound, see Tire repair set [267](#)  
 Seat belt reminder, see Seat belt warning [99](#)  
 Seat belts [98](#)  
 Seat belts, care [312](#)  
 Seat belt warning [99](#)  
 Seat calibration [97](#)  
 Seat heating [229](#)  
 Seating position for children [107](#)  
 Seat position, saving, see Memory function [105](#)  
 Seats and head restraints [93](#)  
 Seats, front [93](#)  
 Securing, cargo [244](#)  
 Selection list on the instrument cluster [142](#)  
 Selector lever [117](#)  
 Selector lever, M Steptronic Sport transmission [117](#)  
 Selector lever position [117](#)  
 Semi-slick, see Sport tires [266](#)  
 Sensors, care [312](#)  
 Sensors of the vehicle [35](#)  
 Sequential mode [119](#)  
 Service and warranty [10](#)  
 Service notifications [150](#)



- Service notifications, see Condition Based Service [294](#)
- Servotronic [184](#)
- SET button, Active Cruise Control [199](#)
- SET button, Cruise Control [196](#)
- Set clock [148](#)
- Set day, see Date [148](#)
- Set time, see Time [148](#)
- Setting, control display [47](#)
- Settings, locking/unlocking [83](#)
- Settings, M Setup [181](#)
- Settings, resetting, vehicle [62](#)
- Settings, seats and head restraints [93](#)
- Shift lights [144](#)
- Shift paddles on the steering wheel [117](#)
- Shift point display [143](#)
- Shift recommendation for best possible acceleration, see Shift lights [144](#)
- Shift recommendation for fuel-efficient driving, see Shift point display [143](#)
- Shortcuts, iDrive [46](#)
- Side airbag [159](#)
- Signaling, horn [30](#)
- Signals when unlocking, see Confirmation signals from the vehicle [84](#)
- SIM Reader, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Sitting safely [93](#)
- Sleep mode, see Operating condition of the vehicle [39](#)
- Slipperiness, see Outside temperature [144](#)
- Slippery road, see Outside temperature [144](#)
- Smallest turning circle, vehicle [314](#)
- Smartphone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
- Smartphone, using via voice control [55](#)
- Snow chains [271](#)
- Sockets, electrical devices [236](#)
- Software Update, see Remote Software Upgrade [58](#)
- Software Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade [58](#)
- Soot particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter [250](#)
- SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call [302](#)
- Sound control [132](#)
- Sound, exhaust gas system [132](#)
- Sound settings, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Sound system, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Speed control, see Cruise Control [196](#)
- Speed display, see Shift lights [144](#)
- Speed indicator, see Speedometer [133](#)
- Speed Limit Assist [205](#)
- Speed Limit Assistant [205](#)
- Speed Limit Device, Speed Limiter [194](#)
- Speed limit, display, see Speed Limit Info [192](#)
- Speed Limit Info [192](#)
- Speedometer, see Instrument cluster [133](#)
- Speed warning [192](#)
- Sport chassis/suspension, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension [222](#)
- Sport displays [150](#)
- Sport program, M Steptronic Sport transmission [117](#)
- Sport tires [266](#)
- Stability control systems [180](#)
- Standard equipment, see Vehicle equipment [8](#)
- Standby, see Operating condition of the vehicle [39](#)
- Start/stop, automatic function [113](#)
- Start/Stop button [113](#)
- Starting aid terminals [304](#)
- Starting, see Drive-ready state [40](#)
- Starting the engine, see Drive-ready state [40](#)
- Starting the engine with the Key Card [78](#)
- Stationary climate control via Remote Engine Start [231](#)
- Stations, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Status control display, tires [273](#)
- Status information, iDrive [44](#)
- Status of Owner's Manual [8](#)
- Status, vehicle [149](#)
- Steering column adjustment [105](#)
- Steering support, see Servotronic [184](#)
- Steering wheel, adjusting [105](#)
- Steering wheel, buttons [30](#)
- Steering wheel heating [105](#)
- Steering wheel position, saving, see Memory function [105](#)

Stopping the engine, see Drive-ready state [40](#)  
 Storage compartment, center console [241](#)  
 Storage compartments [240](#)  
 Storage, tires [265](#)  
 Storing the vehicle [312](#)  
 Stowing, cargo [244](#)  
 Straps for cargo, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area [244](#)  
 Summer tires, tread [262](#)  
 Sun visor [236](#)  
 Supplementary Owner's Handbooks [7](#)  
 Supplementary Owner's Manuals [7](#)  
 Switches, see Dashboard [30](#)  
 SYNC program, automatic climate control [228](#)  
 System language, setting, see Language, setting [53](#)

## T

Tachometer [143](#)  
 Tail light, changing, see Lights and bulbs [296](#)  
 Taking the vehicle out of service [312](#)  
 Tank capacity [315](#)  
 Technical changes, see For Your Own Safety [8](#)  
 Technical data [314](#)  
 Technology, BMW M [248](#)  
 Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)  
 Telephone, selection list in the instrument cluster [142](#)  
 Teleservices, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
 Temperature, automatic climate control [226](#)  
 Temperature display, see outside temperature [144](#)  
 Temperature, engine oil [144](#)  
 Theft alarm system, see Alarm system [85](#)  
 Thigh support [96](#)  
 Through-loading system [245](#)  
 Tilt alarm sensor [86](#)  
 Tilt, backrest [95](#)  
 Tilting down, front passenger's side exterior mirror, see Automatic Curb Monitor [104](#)  
 Time [148](#)  
 Time of day, see Time [148](#)  
 Time setting, automatic [148](#)  
 Time zone [148](#)  
 Tire brands, recommended [264](#)  
 Tire change [263](#)  
 Tire damage [263](#)  
 Tire identification marks [261](#)  
 Tire inflation pressure [258](#)  
 Tire marking [261](#)  
 Tire pressure [258](#)  
 Tire Pressure Monitor [271](#)  
 Tire pressure monitoring, see Flat tire monitor [277](#)  
 Tire Pressure Monitor, reset [273](#)  
 Tire pressure, tires [258](#)  
 Tire pressure warning, see Flat tire monitor [277](#)  
 Tire repair set [267](#)  
 Tires and wheels [258](#)  
 Tire sealant, see Tire repair set [267](#)  
 Tire settings [272](#)  
 Tire tread [262](#)  
 Tools [296](#)  
 Torque display, see Sport displays [150](#)  
 Touchpad, Controller [49](#)  
 Tow bar [306](#)  
 Tow fitting [306](#)  
 Towing [304](#)  
 Tow rope [306](#)  
 Tow-starting [304](#)  
 Track tires, see Sport tires [266](#)  
 Traction control system, see Dynamic Stability Control [186](#)  
 Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
 Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
 Transmission lock, electronic unlocking [122](#)  
 Transmission, manual transmission [116](#)  
 Transmission, see M Steptronic Sport transmission [117](#)  
 Transporting children safely [107](#)  
 Tread, tires [262](#)  
 Trip data [146](#)  
 Triple turn signal activation [127](#)  
 Trip odometer, see Trip data [146](#)  
 Trunk, emergency unlocking [78](#)  
 Trunk lid, emergency unlocking [78](#)

Trunk, see Cargo area [243](#)  
Turn indicators, see Turn signals [127](#)  
Turning circle lines, additional camera view displays [210](#)  
Turning circle, vehicle [314](#)  
Turn signal, indicator light [139](#)  
Turn signal, replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs [296](#)  
Turn signals, operation [127](#)

## U

Ultrasonic sensors, see Sensors of the vehicle [35](#)  
Unintentional alarm, avoiding [86](#)  
Units of measurement, setting [149](#)  
Units, see Units of measurement, setting [149](#)  
Universal remote control [234](#)  
Unlock button, M Steptronic Sport transmission [117](#)  
Unlocking, automatic [84](#)  
Unlocking, see Opening and Closing [69](#)  
Unlocking, settings [83](#)  
Updates made after the editorial deadline [8](#)  
Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade [58](#)  
Upholstery material care [310](#)  
Upper retaining strap, top tether [110](#)  
USB audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
USB port, position in vehicle [237](#)  
Used battery, disposing of [298](#)  
Use, intended [8](#)  
Using menus, see BMW iDrive [43](#)

## V

Valet parking mode [83](#)  
Vanity mirror [236](#)  
Vehicle battery [297](#)  
Vehicle breakdown, see Breakdown assistance [300](#)  
Vehicle, break-in [249](#)  
Vehicle care [309](#)  
Vehicle care products [309](#)  
Vehicle data, resetting [62](#)  
Vehicle equipment [8](#)

Vehicle identification number [13](#)  
Vehicle issues [300](#)  
Vehicle key [69](#)  
Vehicle key, additional [69](#)  
Vehicle key, integrated key [70](#)  
Vehicle key, loss [70](#)  
Vehicle key, malfunction [72](#)  
Vehicle key, replace battery [70](#)  
Vehicle laminated glass [251](#)  
Vehicle paint, care [310](#)  
Vehicle paintwork [310](#)  
Vehicle status [149](#)  
Vehicle storage [312](#)  
Ventilation [229](#)  
Ventilation, see Pre-ventilation [230](#)  
Venting, see Ventilation [229](#)  
Version Software, see Remote Software Upgrade [58](#)  
Video, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)  
VIN, see Vehicle identification number [13](#)  
Voice activation system [51](#)  
Voice control [51](#)  
Voice control, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant [51](#)  
Voice recognition [51](#)  
Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)

## W

Wake word [52](#)  
Warning for crossing traffic [174](#)  
Warning function, rear-end collision [174](#)  
Warning light in exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection [172](#)  
Warning light in exterior mirror, see Cross Traffic Warning [174](#)  
Warning lights [136](#)  
Warning messages, see Check Control [141](#)  
Warning systems for collision hazards [162](#)  
Warning triangle [300](#)  
Warranty [9](#)  
Warranty Booklet, see Warranty [9](#)  
Washer fluid [292](#)  
Washing the vehicle [308](#)

Washing, vehicle [308](#)  
 Water on roads [251](#)  
 Water, see Condensation water under the  
     parked vehicle [253](#)  
 Web page [7](#)  
 Website, see Internet [7](#)  
 Weights [315](#)  
 Welcome lights [154](#)  
 Welcome screen, driver profiles [63](#)  
 Wheelbase [314](#)  
 Wheel base, vehicle [314](#)  
 Wheel change [279](#)  
 Wheels and tires [258](#)  
 Wheels and tires, exchange [263](#)  
 Widgets, iDrive [44](#)  
 Widgets, instrument cluster, see Central dis-  
     play area [145](#)  
 Width, vehicle [314](#)  
 WiFi connections, see Owner's Manual for  
     Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
 Window, defrosting [229](#)  
 Windows, powered [87](#)  
 Windshield cleaning system, see Wiper sys-  
     tem [128](#)  
 Windshield, defrosting [229](#)  
 Windshield washer fluid, see Washer fluid [292](#)  
 Windshield wipers, see Wiper system [128](#)  
 Winter storage, see Long-term vehicle stor-  
     age [312](#)  
 Winter tires [265](#)  
 Winter tires, tread [262](#)  
 Wiper blades, changing [296](#)  
 Wiper fluid, see Washer fluid [292](#)  
 Wiper, fold-away position [130](#)  
 Wipers, see Wiper system [128](#)  
 Wiper system [128](#)  
 Wireless charging, smartphone, see Wireless  
     charging tray [238](#)  
 Wireless charging tray for smartphones [238](#)  
 Wood parts, care [311](#)  
 Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison [45](#)  
 Workshop, see Service notifications [150](#)  
 Wrench, see Onboard vehicle tool kit [296](#)



01405A7D093 ue



## California Proposition 65 Warning

---

For vehicles sold in California:

### **California Proposition 65 Warning**



#### **WARNING**

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to [www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle](http://www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle).

# BMW DRIVER'S GUIDE APP.

## YOUR DIGITAL VEHICLE INFORMATION.

The BMW Driver's Guide app explains the equipment of your vehicle and offers further scopes and functions:



All information surrounding navigation, entertainment and communication

Photorealistic animations for various vehicle functions

Keyword search

360° view: Explore your vehicle interactively inside and out

Smart Scan for Apple iPhone: Icon and optical character recognition on the buttons in the vehicle

Available in more than 30 languages

Can be used offline after download



01405A7D093 ue

